Sustainability reporting developments

A comprehensive guide

Greenhouse Gas Protocol

Interpretative guidance

October 2025

The better the question.
The better the answer.
The better the world works.

Shape the future with confidence

To our clients and other friends

Investors and other stakeholders have increased their focus on climate-related matters over the last several years and are requesting that entities provide reliable data on the direct and indirect greenhouse gas emissions generated throughout an entity's value chain.

Investor demand for reliable climate-related disclosures is further supported by an increased focus from regulators and standard setters, with final requirements issued by the International Sustainability Standards Board (ISSB) and the European Commission. Although the requirements of these final rules and standards differ, they all would require reporting entities to report the amount of greenhouse gases (GHGs) emitted by their operations. They each would either require or allow the use of the Greenhouse Gas Protocol (GHG Protocol) to report the indirect and direct emissions generated by a business.

This demand by investors and regulators has led many entities to turn to their finance and accounting functions to leverage their unique skill sets to enhance ways of producing and reporting these disclosures in a well-controlled environment. As these disclosures become mandatory, the accuracy and auditability of the data included in them will be of even greater importance. Although certain principles and concepts are consistent between financial reporting and GHG emissions accounting and reporting, the requirements of GHG emissions accounting and reporting are unique with certain differences from financial accounting and reporting.

This publication discusses the requirements of the GHG Protocol and provides insights gathered from our experience in helping clients prepare sustainability reports, as well as attesting to the data within these reports. The GHG Protocol will continue to evolve over time and is expected to be updated in the coming years, at which point new or revised guidance is expected. Our goal is to help finance and accounting professionals understand the complexity and nuances of emissions reporting using the GHG Protocol, as well as address certain areas of interpretation. The illustrations provided in this publication are prepared with that goal in mind; they do not use legitimate emissions factors from a certified source and should not be used to calculate emissions.

Although certain underlying principles in the GHG Protocol are based on financial accounting principles, this publication does not describe generally accepted accounting principles. Users should refer to our Financial reporting development (FRD) publications for guidance related to accounting principles.

Ernst & Young LLP

October 2025

Contents

1 Overview and scope 1
1.1 Overview 1
1.2 Scope (updated September 2024) 2
1.3 Categories of GHG emissions (Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions) (updated September 2024) 3
1.4 GHG accounting and reporting principles (updated December 2024) 5
1.4.1 Trade-offs between reporting principles 7
1.5 How to apply the Corporate Standard, Scope 2 Guidance and Scope 3 Standard 8
2 Key concepts 9
2.1 GHG definition 9
2.2 Definition of carbon dioxide equivalent 9
2.2.1 GWP factors 10
2.3 Materiality (updated December 2024) 12
2.4 Estimation uncertainties 13
2.5 Organizational boundaries 14
2.5.1 Consistency in organizational boundaries 15
2.5.2 Equity share approach 15
2.5.3 Control approach 16
2.5.3.1 Financial control 16
2.5.3.2 Operational control 17
2.5.4 Factors to consider when selecting an approach to determine organizational boundary 17
2.5.5 Organizational boundary for specific situations 19
2.5.5.1 Leased assets 19
2.5.5.1.1 Equity share or financial control approach 20
2.5.5.1.2 Operational control approach 20
2.5.6 How the ESRS and ISSB standards define boundaries (updated June 2025) 21
2.6 Operational boundaries (updated September 2024) 21
2.6.1 Identifying emissions associated with operations 22
2.6.2 Classifying emissions associated with operations and determining the extent of accounting and reporting for Scope 3 emissions 23
2.6.2.1 Classifying emissions associated with operations from leased assets (added September 2024) 23
2.7 Emissions over time 24
2.7.1 Base year selection (updated October 2025) 25
2.7.2 Updating base year and prior-year (if reported and recalculated) emissions 26
2.7.2.1 Circumstances that require recalculation (updated September 2024) 27
2.7.2.2 Circumstances that do not require recalculation 30
2.7.2.3 Setting a significance threshold for recalculation of the base year 31
2.7.2.4 Timing of recalculations 31
2.7.2.5 Subsequent events 32
2.7.3 Discovery of errors in prior years 32

2.8 GHG emissions reductions 32
2.8.1 GHG reductions from sources within an entity's organizational boundary 33
2.8.2 Energy attribute certificates (including renewable energy certificates) 33
2.8.2.1 RPS compliance programs 34
2.8.2.2 Incorporation of EACs into Scope 2 emissions (single certificate systems vs. multi-certificate systems) 34
2.8.2.3 Quality criteria (updated October 2025) 34
2.8.2.4 Quality criteria for purchases of steam, heat and cooling 38
2.8.3 Offsets 39
2.8.3.1 Avoidance offsets 39
2.8.3.2 Removal offsets 39
2.8.3.3 Fundamental characteristics of offsets 39
2.8.3.3.1 Identification and quantification of secondary effects 40
2.8.3.4 Verification of offsets 40
3 Scope 1 emissions 41
3.1 Definition 41
3.2 Types of Scope 1 emissions 41
3.2.1 Stationary combustion 42
3.2.2 Mobile combustion 42
3.2.3 Process emissions 42
3.2.4 Fugitive emissions 42
3.2.5 Biogenic emissions 43
3.3 Calculation of Scope 1 emissions 43
3.3.1 Activity data 44
3.3.2 Emissions factors (updated June 2025) 45
3.3.2.1 Different forms of emissions factors (e.g., considering radiative forcing, lifecycle stages, heating value) (updated October 2025) 46
3.3.3 Calculation tools 48
3.4 Disclosure of Scope 1 emissions 48
3.4.1 Required disclosures 49
3.4.2 Optional disclosures 50
3.5 Scope 1 reporting requirements from the California climate laws, ESRS and ISSB standards (updated June 2025) 51
4 Scope 2 emissions 52
4.1 Definition 52
4.2 Sources of electricity 53
4.2.1 Purchased or acquired electricity from direct line transfer 53
4.2.2 Purchased or acquired electricity from an electric grid 54
4.2.3 Distributed electricity generation (electricity consumed from on-site production and the grid) 55
4.2.4 On-site renewable electricity when EACs are sold 57
4.2.5 Considerations for transmission and distribution of electricity 59
4.3 Calculating Scope 2 emissions 59
4.3.1 Applicability of the market-based method 60
4.3.2 Activity data 62
4.3.2.1 Scope 2 emissions from leased assets (updated September 2024) 62

4.4 Location-based method 63
4.4.1 LBM emissions factor hierarchy 63
4.4.2 LBM emissions calculation 64
4.4.3 LBM treatment of emissions from biomass 65
4.5 Market-based method 66
4.5.1 MBM emissions factor hierarchy 66
4.5.1.1 Energy attribute certificates 67
4.5.1.2 Factors from contracts for electricity 67
4.5.1.3 Supplier/utility emission rates 67
4.5.1.4 Residual mix factors 68
4.5.1.5 Other grid average emissions factors 69
4.5.2 MBM emissions calculation 69
4.5.3 MBM treatment of emissions from biomass 70
4.6 Scope 2 disclosures 70
4.6.1 Required Scope 2 disclosures 71
4.6.2 Recommended Scope 2 disclosures 75
4.6.3 Optional Scope 2 disclosures 76
4.6.4 Scope 2 reporting requirements from the California climate laws, ESRS and ISSB standards (updated June 2025) 78
5 Scope 3 emissions (updated December 2024) 80
5.1 Definition 80
5.2 Time boundary 82
5.3 Identifying relevant categories (updated June 2025) 83
5.3.1 Exclusions (updated June 2025) 84
5.4 Selecting calculation methods (updated October 2025) 86
5.5 Types of data 88
5.5.1 Primary data 91
5.5.2 Secondary data 92
5.5.2.1 Environmentally-extended input output (EEIO) data (updated June 2025) 93
5.5.2.2 Processed-based data 94
5.5.2.3 Proxy data 95
5.5.3 Priority of activities 95
5.5.4 Data quality 97
5.6 Calculating Scope 3 emissions 98
5.6.1 Quality of emissions factors 100
5.7 Upstream categories 100
5.7.1 Category 1: Purchased goods and services (updated October 2025) 101
5.7.1.1 Supplier-specific method (updated June 2025) 102
5.7.1.2 Hybrid method 104
5.7.1.3 Average-data method 105
5.7.1.4 Spend-based method 105
5.7.1.5 Consideration of transportation within category 1 emissions (added July 2025) 105
5.7.2 Category 2: Capital goods (updated October 2025) 108
5.7.3 Category 3: Fuel- and energy-related activities (FERA) (not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2) (updated October 2025) 109
5.7.3.1 Emissions factors used in calculation of upstream emission of purchased fuels and electricity 111

5.7.4 Category 4: Upstream transportation and distribution (updated October 2025) 112
5.7.4.1 Calculation methods for upstream transportation 113
5.7.4.1.1 Fuel-based method (upstream transportation) 114
5.7.4.1.2 Distance-based method 115
5.7.4.1.3 Spend-based method 116
5.7.4.2 Calculation methods for upstream distribution 116
5.7.4.2.1 Site-specific method 117
5.7.4.2.2 Average-data method 117
5.7.5 Category 5: Waste generated in operations 118
5.7.5.1 Supplier-specific method (updated October 2025) 119
5.7.5.2 Waste-type-specific method 120
5.7.5.3 Average-data method 120
5.7.5.4 Emissions from recycling waste from operations and incineration with energy recovery 120
5.7.5.5 Emissions from wastewater (updated June 2025) 121
5.7.6 Category 6: Business travel (updated October 2025) 122
5.7.6.1 Fuel-based method 124
5.7.6.2 Distance-based method 124
5.7.6.3 Spend-based method 125
5.7.7 Category 7: Employee commuting (updated October 2025) 125
5.7.7.1 Fuel-based method 126
5.7.7.2 Distance-based method 126
5.7.7.3 Average-data method 127
5.7.8 Category 8: Upstream leased assets (updated October 2025) 127
5.7.8.1 Asset-specific method 128
5.7.8.2 Lessor-specific method 129
5.7.8.3 Average-data method 129
5.8 Downstream categories 130
5.8.1 Category 9: Downstream transportation and distribution (updated October 2025) 131
5.8.1.1 Calculation methods for downstream transportation 132
5.8.1.2 Calculation methods for downstream distribution 132
5.8.2 Category 10: Processing sold products (updated October 2025) 132
5.8.2.1 Site-specific method 133
5.8.2.2 Average-data method 134
5.8.3 Category 11: Use of sold products 135
5.8.3.1 Direct use-phase 137
5.8.3.1.1 Products that directly consume energy during use (updated June 2025) 137
5.8.3.1.2 Fuels and feedstocks 138
5.8.3.1.3 GHGs and products that emit GHGs in use 139
5.8.3.2 Indirect use-phase 139
5.8.4 Category 12: End-of-life treatment of sold products 140
5.8.5 Category 13: Downstream leased assets (updated October 2025) 141
5.8.6 Category 14: Franchises (updated October 2025) 142
5.8.6.1 Franchise-specific method 143
5.8.6.2 Average-data method 143
5.8.7 Category 15: Investments 144
5.8.7.1 Equity investments 147
5.8.7.1.1 Investment-specific method 147

5.8.7.1.2 Average-data method 148
5.8.7.2 Debt investments with known use of proceeds and/or project finance 148
5.8.7.2.1 Project-specific method 149
5.8.7.2.2 Average-data method 149
5.9 Allocation 150
5.9.1 Allocation methods 151
5.10 Sampling (updated October 2025) 153
5.10.1 Sampling methods 153
5.10.2 Sample size 154
5.11 Scope 3 disclosures 155
5.11.1 Required disclosures 155
5.11.2 Recommended disclosures 156
5.11.3 Optional disclosures 157
5.11.4 Scope 3 reporting requirements from the California climate laws, ESRS and ISSB standards (updated June 2025) 158
6 General disclosures 159
6.1 Required disclosures 159
6.2 Optional disclosures 161
A Abbreviations used in this publication A-1
B Glossary B-1
C GHG Protocol Disclosure Checklist C-1
D Summary of important changes D-1

Notice to readers:

This publication includes excerpts from and references to standards and guidance issued by the Greenhouse Gas Protocol. The standards and guidance of the Greenhouse Gas Protocol are included in various publications with multiple chapters. Throughout this publication references to guidance in the Greenhouse Gas Protocol are shown using the publication name and chapter number. Similar information may be included in multiple publications of the Greenhouse Gas Protocol.

This publication has been carefully prepared, but it necessarily contains information in summary form and, therefore, is intended for general guidance only; it is not intended to be a substitute for detailed research or the exercise of professional judgment. The information presented in this publication should not be construed as legal, tax, accounting, or any other professional advice or service. Ernst & Young LLP can accept no responsibility for loss occasioned to any person acting or refraining from action as a result of any material in this publication. You should consult with Ernst & Young LLP or other professional advisors familiar with your particular factual situation for advice concerning specific audit, tax or other matters before making any decisions.

1 Overview and scope

1.1 Overview

The GHG Protocol provides standards and guidance for measuring and managing GHG emissions. Many reporting entities apply the protocol in their voluntary reporting, and regulators and standard setters that are developing new requirements for climate-related reporting also refer to it.

The GHG Protocol is a partnership between the World Resources Institute (WRI), a US-based global research non-profit organization focused on global challenges, including climate, and the World Business Council for Sustainable Development (WBCSD), a Geneva-based coalition of more than 200 international companies focusing on sustainability matters, working in collaboration with businesses, non-governmental organizations and other stakeholders.

The partnership has issued the following publications, which we refer to collectively as the GHG Protocol:

- Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard (Corporate Standard)[1]
- Scope 2 Guidance[2]
- Corporate Value Chain (Scope 3) Accounting and Reporting Standard (Scope 3 Standard)[3]
- Technical Guidance for Calculating Scope 3 Emissions (Scope 3 Guidance)[4]

This Sustainability reporting developments publication discusses these publications, which address accounting for, measuring and reporting emissions of the following seven greenhouse gases identified by the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC):

- Carbon dioxide (CO_2)
- Methane (CH_4)
- Nitrous oxide (N_2O)
- Hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs)
- Perfluorocarbons (PFCs)
- Sulfur hexafluoride (SF_6)
- Nitrogen trifluoride (NF_3)

The partnership has also published other standards, including standards for governments and standards on emissions from a project and during a product's lifecycle. This publication does not address those standards.

---

1 https://ghgprotocol.org/corporate-standard
2 https://ghgprotocol.org/scope-2-guidance
3 https://ghgprotocol.org/corporate-value-chain-scope-3-standard
4 https://ghgprotocol.org/scope-3-calculation-guidance-2

The Corporate Standard was first issued in 2001, subsequently amended[5] in 2013 and supplemented by the Scope 2 Guidance, Scope 3 Standard and Scope 3 Guidance. Refer to section 1.5 for a discussion of when to apply these standards and guidance.

Updates to the GHG Protocol

The GHG Protocol is in the process of updating its standards and guidance. As of the date of this publication, the GHG Protocol has communicated that draft guidance will be available in 2026, and revised standards will be finalized in 2027. Stakeholders should monitor developments for potential changes to these timelines.

The GHG Protocol includes guidance for how corporate entities and other types of organizations (e.g., nonprofit entities, non-governmental organizations, government agencies) gather information about their GHG emissions and report that information to stakeholders. The GHG Protocol requires a reporting entity to first define its organizational boundary, which determines the entities (or portions of entities) that should be included by the reporting entity for purposes of GHG emissions reporting.

A reporting entity identifies its organizational boundary using either the equity share or control approach. This process is similar to the process to define the reporting entity for a set of financial statements for financial reporting (i.e., what entities to consolidate), though the evaluation is not the same. After setting its organizational boundary, the reporting entity establishes its operational boundary, which determines the direct and indirect emissions associated with operations it owns or controls and the extent of accounting and reporting for indirect emissions that occur outside of the reporting entity. See section 2.5 and section 2.6 for more information about establishing organizational and operational boundaries, respectively.

Once the boundaries are set, the reporting entity calculates GHG emissions for each reported scope (see section 1.3 for more information about each scope). These emissions are typically measured in metric tons of individual GHGs and metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO_2e) units, a standard metric used to compare the impact of greenhouse gases on the environment (see section 2.2).

The GHG Protocol is designed to enable reporting entities to track and report consistent and comparable GHG emissions data over time. Therefore, it requires a reporting entity to establish a base year (a specific year or an average of multiple years) against which subsequent emissions can be compared.

The GHG Protocol requires the base year emissions to be retrospectively recalculated in certain circumstances to maintain comparability over time (see section 2.7 for more information regarding establishing a base year and reporting emissions over time). In addition, the GHG Protocol includes required and recommended disclosures about a reporting entity's GHG emissions (see section 3.4 for disclosure requirements related to Scope 1 emissions, section 4.6 for disclosure requirements related to Scope 2 emissions, section 5.3 for disclosure requirements related to Scope 3 emissions and chapter 6 for general disclosure requirements).

1.2 Scope (updated September 2024)

Many entities use the GHG Protocol to account for, measure and report on their GHG emissions in voluntary sustainability reports. However, some standard setters and policymakers throughout the world are beginning to require entities to use (or consider the principles in) the GHG Protocol in their sustainability disclosures.

[5] Required gases and GWP values_0.pdf (ghgprotocol.org)

For example, the International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) Sustainability Disclosure Standards issued by the ISSB require an entity to use the GHG Protocol to measure its GHG emissions, and the European Sustainability Reporting Standards (ESRS) issued by the European Commission require an entity to consider the principles, requirements and guidance in the GHG Protocol. Additionally, the state of California enacted two climate-disclosure laws that require certain entities (public and private entities that do business in the state and meet certain annual revenue thresholds) to report emissions using the GHG Protocol.

How we see it

Different standards require the use of the GHG Protocol differently. For example, the ISSB Standards require a reporting entity to use the GHG Protocol to measure its emissions, but don't require its use for other elements of sustainability disclosures (e.g., target-setting, recalculating prior years). Entities should be familiar with how each standard incorporates the GHG Protocol to make sure they comply appropriately.

1.3 Categories of GHG emissions (Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions) (updated September 2024)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Glossary

Scope 1 emissions Emissions from operations that are owned or controlled by the reporting company.

Scope 2 emissions Indirect emissions from the generation of purchased or acquired electricity, steam, heat or cooling consumed by the reporting company.

Scope 3 emissions All indirect emissions (not included in Scope 2) that occur in the value chain of the reporting company, including both upstream and downstream emissions.

The GHG Protocol requires a reporting entity to categorize GHG emissions as follows:

- Scope 1 emissions are direct emissions from sources owned or controlled by a reporting entity within its reporting boundary (refer to sections 2.5 and 2.6 for discussion of the reporting boundary, which is a combination of a reporting entity's selected organizational and operational boundaries). Common examples include emissions from fuel combustion at entity-owned production plant generators or fuel emissions from entity-owned or entity-controlled vehicles.
- Scope 2 emissions are the indirect emissions generated from purchased energy (i.e., electricity, heat, steam and cooling) that was consumed by a reporting entity. Common examples include emissions from the generation of electricity purchased from a utility company.
- Scope 3 emissions are indirect emissions, other than Scope 2 emissions, from sources owned or controlled by other entities in a reporting entity's value chain (i.e., upstream or downstream activities). Common examples include emissions from purchased goods or services and emissions from business travel.

The GHG Protocol requires a reporting entity to differentiate its GHG emissions from direct and indirect sources (i.e., Scope 1 vs. Scope 2 and Scope 3). All direct emissions are Scope 1 emissions, and all Scope 1 emissions are direct emissions. Indirect emissions are categorized either as Scope 2 or Scope 3, depending on the nature of the emissions. The key differentiator between direct and indirect emissions is ownership/control

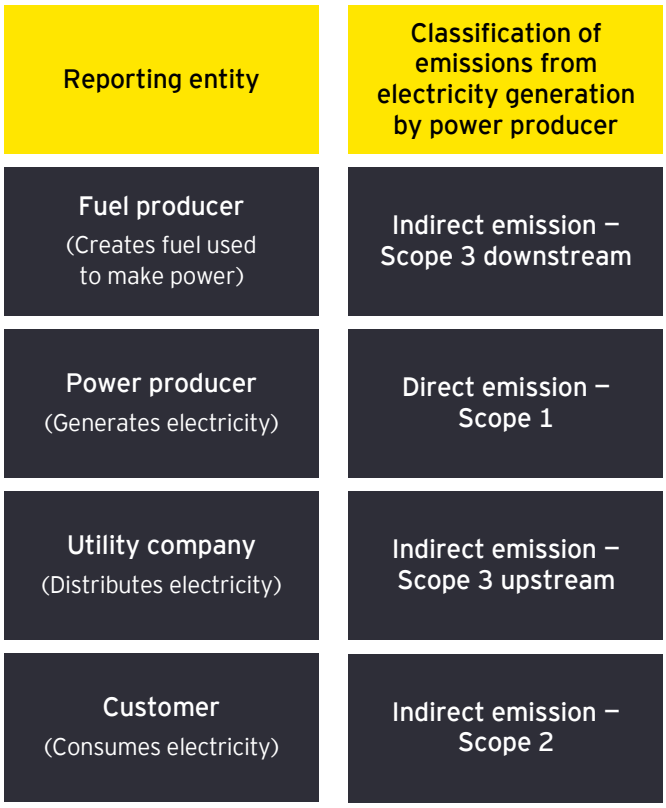
of the source of emissions. Direct emissions are emissions from sources that are owned or controlled by the reporting entity. Indirect emissions are a consequence of the activities of the reporting entity but occur at sources owned or controlled by someone else. Examples of direct and indirect emissions are:

- Direct emissions: A manufacturer uses a boiler to power certain manufacturing processes (such as heating materials). Because the boiler is on site and controlled by the manufacturer, the GHGs emitted from the boiler using fossil fuels would be direct emissions. (Scope 1)
- Indirect emissions: A manufacturer uses electricity to provide power to its corporate headquarters. The fuel needed to produce that electricity is combusted at a power plant, which is not owned or controlled by the manufacturer. However, the manufacturer is consuming the electricity generated by the power plant. Thus, the emissions generated are indirect emissions for the manufacturer. (Scope 2)

The GHG protocol does not require a reporting entity to report on Scope 3 emissions (see section 1.5). However, some regulations or standards (e.g., ISSB, ESRS) may require it to report Scope 3 emissions. This accounting and reporting structure increases the transparency of the emissions based on which party is emitting the GHGs. It also avoids double counting by making sure that two or more reporting entities do not account for the same emissions in Scope 1, while also providing information about a reporting entity's other GHG emissions. That is, if every entity and individual throughout the world reported their GHG emissions, the total of all Scope 1 emissions would equal the total GHGs emitted throughout the world.

However, a stakeholder may also want information about how a reporting entity's decisions (e.g., how much purchased electricity its production process uses, the impact of business travel) affects GHG emissions, which is why reporting entities also report their indirect GHG emissions in Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions.

The following graphic, based on Figure B.1 in the Scope 2 Guidance, shows how GHG emissions created from the generation of electricity by the power producer would be reported under the different scopes for various reporting entities involved in the value chain.



Identifying the relevant scope is fundamental to applying the GHG Protocol, because the accounting and reporting requirements differ based on the scope of the GHG emission. The following illustrations show how electricity emissions used in a manufacturing process and for cloud computing services would be reported by different entities.

Illustration 1-1: Classification of electricity emissions used in a manufacturing process

A power company generates and sells electricity directly to a toy manufacturing company, which then uses that electricity to produce a product. The product is then sold to a toy store.

- The power company that generates electricity would report the emissions from that electricity generation in its Scope 1 emissions.
- The toy manufacturing company that consumes the electricity while making the product would report the electricity-related emissions in its Scope 2 emissions.
- The toy store that purchases the product would report the emissions used to make the product (including the portion of the electricity-related emissions required to produce the purchased product) in its upstream Scope 3 emissions.

Illustration 1-2: Classification of electricity emissions used for cloud computing services

A power company generates and sells electricity directly to a technology company, which then uses that electricity to provide cloud computing services for its customers.

- The power company that generates electricity would report the emissions from that electricity generation in its Scope 1 emissions.
- The technology company that consumes the electricity while providing the cloud computing services would report the electricity-related emissions in its Scope 2 emissions.
- The customers that purchase the cloud computing services would report these emissions in their upstream Scope 3 emissions.

1.4 GHG accounting and reporting principles (updated December 2024)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 3

As with financial accounting and reporting, generally accepted GHG accounting and reporting principles are intended to underpin and guide GHG accounting and reporting to ensure that the reported information represents a faithful, true, and fair account of a company's GHG emissions.

GHG accounting and reporting shall be based on the following principles:

- **Relevance**. Ensure the GHG inventory appropriately reflects the GHG emissions of the company and serves the decision-making needs of users—both internal and external to the company.
- **Completeness**. Account for and report on all GHG emission sources and activities within the inventory boundary. Disclose and justify any specific exclusion.

- **Consistency.** Use consistent methodologies to allow for meaningful performance tracking of emissions over time. Transparently document any changes to the data, inventory boundary, methods, or any other relevant factors in the time series.
- **Transparency.** Address all relevant issues in a factual and coherent manner, based on a clear audit trail. Disclose any relevant assumptions and make appropriate references to the accounting and calculation methodologies and data sources used.
- **Accuracy**. Ensure that the quantification of GHG emissions is systematically neither over nor under actual emissions, as far as can be judged, and that uncertainties are reduced as far as practicable. Achieve sufficient accuracy to enable users to make decisions with reasonable confidence as to the integrity of the reported information.

The GHG Protocol is a principles-based set of standards. The principles serve as a foundation for a true and fair presentation of an entity's GHG emissions in accordance with the guidance in the GHG Protocol. They provide reporting entities with direction when the application of the GHG Protocol to specific facts and circumstances is not addressed or is otherwise unclear.

These principles are partially based on the financial accounting and reporting principles included in chapters of the conceptual frameworks of the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB)[6] and of the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB),[7] which are relevance, faithful representation, comparability, verifiability, timeliness and understandability.

The following are the GHG accounting and reporting principles included in the Corporate Standard, the Scope 2 Guidance and the Scope 3 Standard:

Relevance: A reporting entity's GHG inventory should accurately reflect its GHG emissions and provide both internal and external users with decision-useful information. A key attribute of relevance is the selection of an appropriate reporting boundary that reflects the economic reality of the reporting entity's operations, not just the legal form. Refer to sections 2.5 and 2.6 for a discussion of boundaries.

- For example, a consulting firm with a global footprint and a high frequency of employee travel across offices internationally would determine emissions from air travel and other modes of transportation are highly relevant.

Consistency: A reporting entity should apply the same methodologies over time. This principle applies to data sources, identified boundaries and any other factors that are relevant to users of the report. Any changes to the methodologies, data, boundaries or other relevant factors should be disclosed. When applied, this principle allows users of the report to observe changes in trends and assess the performance of the reporting entity over time. Unlike for financial reporting, the consistency principle does not address comparability across reporting entities.

- For example, a reporting entity may acquire or divest an entity, which changes the boundaries for emissions reporting. The reporting entity would be required to disclose the change in entities included in the boundary and recalculate the base year emissions using the new boundary to comply with the consistency principle.

---

[6] Chapter 3, *Qualitative Characteristics of Useful Financial Information*, of Financial Accounting Standards Board Concepts Statement No. 8, *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*

[7] Chapter 2, *Qualitative Characteristics of Useful Financial Information*, of the International Accounting Standards Board's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*

Transparency: A reporting entity should address all relevant issues in a factual, neutral, understandable and auditable manner. A reporting entity should disclose relevant assumptions, methodologies and data sources. The information disclosed should be sufficient for a third party to be able to reach the same conclusions if it was provided the same data. The GHG Protocol indicates that independent external attestation, although not required by the GHG Protocol, is an effective method to demonstrate transparency.

- For example, a reporting entity may use external data sources to determine certain information, such as its emissions factors. An entity should disclose the source behind the emissions factors as well as the year of the data to comply with the principle of transparency and indicate why that emissions factor was chosen for use in the calculation of emissions.

Accuracy: A reporting entity should present emissions information with sufficient accuracy for users to make decisions based on the reasonable integrity of the data. The emissions information reported should not be systematically over or under the actual emissions. A reporting entity should reduce the uncertainty inherent in emissions data as far as practicable.

- For example, a reporting entity would likely need to make certain estimates when calculating total emissions, which would inherently be subject to estimation uncertainty. An entity should seek to minimize this uncertainty through appropriate tools.

Completeness: A reporting entity should account for and report on all GHG emissions sources and activities within the identified boundary, with any exclusions specifically identified, justified and disclosed. The use of a materiality threshold for reporting emissions is not consistent with this principle. That is, a materiality threshold may be used to determine whether an incomplete inventory is a material discrepancy that would affect the decisions of users of the report, but any exclusions should still be identified and justified.

- For example, a reporting entity that decides to only include emissions data from facilities over a certain number of square feet would have an incomplete facility listing when calculating total emissions. This would be inconsistent with the completeness principle, which would require that the reporting entity either include those facilities in the calculation of emissions data or have a valid reason to justify the exclusion (with appropriate disclosure).

How we see it

Reporting entities should strive to report all relevant emissions from within their boundaries to adhere to the completeness principle. While the GHG Protocol implies exclusions are permissible, they must be assessed for materiality and relevance (i.e., whether any exclusions, individually or in the aggregate, are determined to be material and/or their exclusion makes the reported emissions profile misleading). Generally, material emissions within the chosen boundaries should only be excluded if it is not possible for the company to reasonably estimate such emissions (e.g., data needed to perform the calculation or estimate is not available). Such exclusions must be identified, justified and disclosed.

We believe that appropriate justification for the exclusion of emissions is a high hurdle to achieve, so entities should evaluate whether exclusions are truly justified.

1.4.1 Trade-offs between reporting principles

A reporting entity may face trade-offs between some of the reporting principles in certain cases. For example, it may determine that achieving a more complete inventory requires the use of less accurate data, which would affect the accuracy of the inventory. Conversely, it may determine that achieving a more accurate inventory requires the exclusion of certain activities with low accuracy, which would affect the completeness of the inventory. The reporting entity will need to balance the principles based on its

facts and circumstances and compensate for these trade-offs through disclosure. These types of conflicts may resolve themselves over time, so a reporting entity should reevaluate its assessment as facts and circumstances change. For example, as the accuracy and completeness of data increases, the conflict between the completeness and accuracy principles in the example above will be reduced.

1.5 How to apply the Corporate Standard, Scope 2 Guidance and Scope 3 Standard

The Corporate Standard provides the foundational requirements and guidance for accounting and reporting for GHG emissions. The Scope 2 Guidance amends the Corporate Standard and adds requirements and guidance for accounting and reporting for Scope 2 emissions (e.g., how to consider contractual instruments, such as renewable energy certificates, when calculating Scope 2 emissions). Therefore, an entity reporting under the Corporate Standard must also report under the Scope 2 Guidance.

The Scope 3 Standard supplements the Corporate Standard and provides additional requirements and guidance on reporting Scope 3 emissions if a reporting entity elects to report under both the Corporate Standard and the Scope 3 Standard. The Scope 3 Guidance supplements the Scope 3 Standard and provides practical guidance for calculating Scope 3 emissions, including calculation methodologies for each Scope 3 category, potential data sources to be used and illustrative examples.

An entity reporting under the Corporate Standard is not required to disclose Scope 3 emissions. As a result, there are three options under the GHG Protocol for reporting Scope 3 emissions, as described in the following table, which is based on Table 1.1 in the Scope 3 Standard:

Option	Description	Applicable GHG criteria
1	A reporting entity reports its Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG emissions and either (1) no Scope 3 emissions or (2) Scope 3 emissions from activities that are not aligned with any of the prescribed Scope 3 categories (the latter is very rare)	▸ Corporate Standard ▸ Scope 2 Guidance
2	A reporting entity reports its Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG emissions and some, but not all, relevant Scope 3 GHG emissions in accordance with the Scope 3 calculation guidance but not with the Scope 3 Standard	▸ Corporate Standard ▸ Scope 2 Guidance ▸ Scope 3 Guidance
3	A reporting entity reports its Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG emissions and all relevant categories of Scope 3 GHG emissions	▸ Corporate Standard ▸ Scope 2 Guidance ▸ Scope 3 Standard ▸ Scope 3 Guidance

We believe that an entity reporting Scope 3 emissions under the Corporate Standard should use the Scope 3 Guidance as the basis for its calculations. The disclosures required by the Corporate Standard are similar to those in the Scope 3 Standard, but the Scope 3 Standard requires disaggregation of certain disclosures by Scope 3 category. Therefore, we also believe that an entity reporting any Scope 3 emissions categories under the Corporate Standard should provide its disclosures disaggregated by Scope 3 category, instead of at an aggregate level.

Certain disclosures are required while others are optional under the Corporate Standard, Scope 2 Guidance and Scope 3 Standard, so a reporting entity will need to disclose the applicable information from each applicable standard. Refer to section 3.4, section 4.6, section 5.3 and chapter 6 of this publication for a list of the applicable disclosures.

2 Key concepts

2.1 GHG definition

The GHG Protocol addresses emissions of the seven GHGs defined by the UNFCCC[8] – carbon dioxide (CO_2), methane (CH_4), nitrous oxide (N_2O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulfur hexafluoride (SF_6) and nitrogen trifluoride (NF_3). These gases are classified as GHGs because they trap heat in the atmosphere. Some of the common sources of GHG emissions are as follows:

- Carbon dioxide is primarily emitted through fuel combustion (or combustion of waste, wood, and other biological material) and industrial processes, with the burning of fossil fuels being the most significant source. Carbon dioxide can be removed from the atmosphere, or sequestered, through natural biological methods (e.g., absorbed by plants) or other processes.
- Methane is primarily emitted during the processing or production of coal, natural gas and oil. Methane is also emitted by certain agricultural practices, livestock and the decay of organic compounds.
- Nitrous oxide is primarily emitted from agricultural soil management, land use, industrial activities, burning fossil fuels and waste, and treating wastewater.
- Hydrofluorocarbons, perfluorocarbons, sulfur hexafluoride and nitrogen trifluoride are synthetic GHGs (i.e., they do not have natural sources) that are primarily emitted from household, commercial and industrial processes. Hydrofluorocarbons are primarily used as refrigerants. Perfluorocarbons are a byproduct of aluminum production and are used in the manufacturing of semiconductors. Sulfur hexafluoride is used in magnesium production and in the manufacturing of semiconductors; it is also an insulating gas in electrical transmission equipment. Nitrogen trifluoride is used in the manufacturing of semiconductors.

The GHG Protocol acknowledges there are other GHGs (e.g., chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), nitrogen oxides (NOx)) that are not covered by the UNFCCC and includes an optional disclosure for a reporting entity to separately disclose GHG emissions from other GHGs.

How we see it

Carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxide are the most common GHGs emitted by an entity and will likely be included in a reporting entity's emissions. Additionally, hydrofluorocarbons are emitted by many entities using refrigeration or air conditioning, so they are often included in a reporting entity's emissions. The remaining synthetic GHGs (i.e., PFCs, SF_6 and NF_3) are more industry-specific and may not be emitted by all reporting entities.

2.2 Definition of carbon dioxide equivalent

Each GHG described above has a different global warming potential (GWP). The GWP of a given GHG indicates how much energy one unit of the GHG absorbs (i.e., the ability of that gas to trap heat in the atmosphere) compared to one unit of carbon dioxide, generally over a 100-year period. The larger the GWP, the more that the GHG warms the earth compared to carbon dioxide over the stated time period.

[8] The Corporate Standard initially included only six GHGs. However, the Corporate Standard was amended in 2013 to add NF_3 as a seventh GHG for disclosure under the GHG Protocol.

For example, PFCs and HFCs often absorb thousands of times more energy than carbon dioxide. The GWP of each GHG is published as a factor and used to translate GHGs, other than carbon dioxide, into carbon dioxide equivalent (CO_2e) units.

The GHG Protocol considers CO_2e to be the universal unit of measurement for GHGs since it expresses the GWP of each GHG in terms of the GWP of one unit of carbon dioxide. CO_2e and individual GHGs are often expressed in metric tons, which is the equivalent of 1,000 kilograms (or approximately 2,204 pounds). The purpose of this measure is to enable a reporting entity, users and other stakeholders to compare the potency of the overall emissions from a reporting entity, both across entities and over time, even when the composition of the GHG emissions changes.

2.2.1 GWP factors

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 7

Global warming potential (GWP) values

Global warming potential (GWP) values describe the radiative forcing impact (or degree of harm to the atmosphere) of one unit of a given GHG relative to one unit of carbon dioxide. GWP values convert GHG emissions data for non-CO_2 gases into units of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO_2e).

Companies should use GWP values provided by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) based on a 100-year time horizon. Companies may either use the IPCC GWP values agreed to by United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) or the most recent GWP values published by the IPCC. Companies should use consistent GWP values across their Scope 1, Scope 2, and Scope 3 inventory and should maintain consistency in the source of GWP values used over time (by consistently following guidance provided by either the UNFCCC or IPCC, once selected). Companies that have already developed Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG inventories should use the same GWP values for Scope 3 to maintain consistency across the scopes. Companies that have not previously developed a corporate GHG inventory should use the most recent GWP values.

Companies are required to disclose the source of GWP values used to calculate the inventory.

Accounting and Reporting Standard Amendment

Companies:

- Shall use 100-year GWP values from the IPCC.
- Should use GWP values from the most recent Assessment Report, but may choose to use other IPCC Assessment Reports.
- Shall use GWPs from a single Assessment Report for any one inventory, where possible. If GWPs for a particular gas are not provided in the chosen Assessment Report, companies shall select the most recent GWPs for that gas.
- Should use the same GWPs for the current inventory period and the base year, as well as for inventories prepared according to the Scope 3 Standard, to maintain consistency across time and scopes.

Accounting and Reporting Standard Amendment

Required information:

- Source of the GWP values and indicate if multiple Assessment Reports have been used.

The GHG Protocol recommends that a reporting entity use GWP factors published by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), which are calculated based on a 100-year time horizon. If a reporting entity reports a GHG inventory for the first time, it should use the most recent values published by the IPCC. A reporting entity that has already developed a GHG inventory may use either the:

- Most recent GWP values published by the IPCC (i.e., currently, the Sixth Assessment Report (AR6) of the IPCC, issued in April 2022[9])
- IPCC values agreed to by the UNFCCC (i.e., currently the Fourth Assessment Report (AR4) of the IPCC)

The source of the GWP values that are used should be, where possible, consistent across all scopes and must clearly be disclosed, including indicating whether multiple assessment reports have been used. Additionally, once a selection has been made (i.e., either the most recent GWP values or values agreed to by UNFCCC), a reporting entity should consistently apply this selection over time. See section 2.7.2 of this publication for a discussion of how a reporting entity should update previously reported emissions if it elects to use the most recent GWP value issued by the IPCC and the IPCC issues new GWP values. The GHG Protocol website[10] has not been updated for the GWP values published by the IPCC in AR6 but includes the values published within AR4 and the Fifth Assessment Report (AR5). Many of the tools published by the GHG Protocol also currently use GWP values from AR5. The following chart lists the IPCC GWP values for certain GHGs published in AR4, AR5 and AR6 using a 100-year time horizon:

GHG	AR4	AR5	AR6
CO_2	1	1	1
CH_4	25	28	28
N_2O	298	265	273
SF_6	22,800	23,500	25,200
NF_3	17,200	16,100	17,400

See the GHG Protocol website[10] for the GWP values for the various HFCs and PFCs. As discussed in section 2.7.2.1 below, when a new or updated emissions factor or GWP value is used, a reporting entity should recalculate base year emissions (and prior year emissions if recalculated) using the new emissions factor or GWP value if the impact is material.

How we see it

As illustrated above, the differences in GWP values among the IPCC AR4, AR5 and AR6 may not be large enough to be significant to the users of the sustainability report, particularly when a reporting entity has limited SF_6 and NF_3 emissions. We believe a reporting entity may use a previous version of the GWP factors published by the IPCC (i.e., the AR4 or AR5) if the difference in the reported information is not material to the users. See section 3.3.2 for considerations around GWP values that are included in emissions factors.

[9] IPCC_AR6_WGI_Chapter_07_Supplementary_Material.pdf

[10] https://ghgprotocol.org/sites/default/files/Global-Warming-Potential-Values%20%28Feb%2016%202016%29_0.pdf

2.3 Materiality (updated December 2024)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 10

Chapter 1 provides a useful interpretation of the relationship between the principle of completeness and the concept of materiality. Information is considered to be material if, by its inclusion or exclusion, it can be seen to influence any decisions or actions taken by users of it. A material discrepancy is an error (for example, from an oversight, omission or miscalculation) that results in a reported quantity or statement being significantly different to the true value or meaning.

While the concept of materiality involves a value judgment, the point at which a discrepancy becomes material (materiality threshold) is usually pre-defined. As a rule of thumb, an error is considered to be materially misleading if its value exceeds 5% of the total inventory for the part of the organization being verified.

The verifier needs to assess an error or omission in the full context within which information is presented. For example, if a 2% error prevents a company from achieving its corporate target then this would most likely be considered material.

Chapter 1

All relevant emissions sources within the chosen inventory boundary need to be accounted for so that a comprehensive and meaningful inventory is compiled. In practice, a lack of data or the cost of gathering data may be a limiting factor. Sometimes it is tempting to define a minimum emissions accounting threshold (often referred to as a materiality threshold) stating that a source not exceeding a certain size can be omitted from the inventory. Technically, such a threshold is simply a predefined and accepted negative bias in estimates (i.e., an underestimate). Although it appears useful in theory, the practical implementation of such a threshold is not compatible with the completeness principle of the GHG Protocol Corporate Standard. In order to utilize a materiality specification, the emissions from a particular source or activity would have to be quantified to ensure they were under the threshold. However, once emissions are quantified, most of the benefit of having a threshold is lost.

A threshold is often used to determine whether an error or omission is a material discrepancy or not. This is not the same as a de minimis for defining a complete inventory. Instead companies need to make a good faith effort to provide a complete, accurate, and consistent accounting of their GHG emissions. For cases where emissions have not been estimated, or estimated at an insufficient level of quality, it is important that this is transparently documented and justified. Verifiers can determine the potential impact and relevance of the exclusion, or lack of quality, on the overall inventory report.

The GHG Protocol defines material information as information that, if included or excluded, would influence any decisions or actions taken by users of that information. The GHG Protocol does not provide a "bright line" indicating the appropriate level of materiality that should be used by a reporting entity and indicates materiality should consider both quantitative and qualitative factors. However, it does provide an example of 5% of the total inventory for the part of the organization being verified as a frequent measure of materiality used by entities verifying emissions information. Each verifier or assurance provider will set its own materiality based on professional standards and its methodology, which could differ from the example provided. The concept of materiality is used throughout the GHG Protocol.

Establishing a materiality threshold to evaluate errors and omissions is not the same as using a de minimis threshold when preparing a complete inventory (i.e., omitting certain GHG emissions within the identified boundary and not disclosing that omission because the related emissions are expected to be de minimis). Any emissions omitted need to be estimated to determine whether they result in a material error. If they are material, any exclusions of GHG emissions sources and activities within the identified boundary should be specifically identified, justified and disclosed.

How we see it

The concept of materiality is used in the GHG Protocol to evaluate discrepancies (e.g., an error in a calculation, an omission). The GHG Protocol provides a threshold of 5% as an example when evaluating discrepancies, but this is not a prescriptive threshold and preparers and assurance providers should consider all factors (qualitative factors in addition to the quantitative factors) when evaluating a discrepancy. This threshold should not be used for purposes of compiling a complete inventory. While the GHG Protocol allows for exclusions, it emphasizes that entities should strive to report all emissions and that any exclusions should be evaluated for relevance and materiality.

There are many criteria that should be considered when determining whether an emissions source is relevant (refer to section 5.3.1 for a list). One of the criteria to evaluate relevance is size. If an emissions source is determined to not be relevant based on size (and is also not relevant according to the other criteria), it may be excluded. However, determining that an emissions source is not relevant based on size should not be confused with stating that it is not material. An emissions source may be below the materiality threshold defined by the entity or the assurance provider but may still be relevant based on size (or based on one of the other relevance criteria). A reporting entity will need to provide sufficient support to justify why an emissions source is not relevant.

Any exclusions that do not meet the criteria to be determined not relevant, and cannot be justified (e.g., because it is not possible for the company to reasonably estimate such emissions), are generally considered discrepancies under the GHG Protocol, at which point they should be evaluated for materiality according to the guidance above. Material errors should be corrected.

2.4 Estimation uncertainties

The GHG Protocol acknowledges that it is necessary for an entity to make certain estimates to compile its emissions inventory. Each estimate contains a certain level of uncertainty that should be considered when assessing the reliability of the emissions inventory.

Emissions estimates are subject to two types of uncertainty: scientific uncertainty, which is specific to emissions reporting, and estimation uncertainty, which commonly exists in estimates used to prepare financial statements.

Scientific uncertainty is created when the science of the actual emission generation and/or removal process is not fully understood. Understanding and quantifying the impact of scientific uncertainty on an entity's emissions inventory is highly subjective.

Estimation uncertainty arises anytime emissions are calculated. Estimation uncertainty is the combination of:

- Model uncertainty, which is uncertainty inherent in the ability of the models to calculate the actual emissions
- Parameter uncertainty, which is uncertainty regarding the accuracy of the inputs (e.g., activity data) to the models used to quantify emissions

Understanding or quantifying the impact of model uncertainty on an entity's emissions inventory is highly subjective. However, the impact of parameter uncertainty can often be calculated through sensitivity analysis, statistical analysis and professional know-how. For example, a reporting entity that uses sampling to develop its activity data can use statistical analysis to quantify the uncertainty in the data. A reporting entity can also compare its activity data across multiple reference sources, including different facilities and public data.

Given the prevalence of estimates in emissions inventory data, the GHG Protocol has developed supplementary guidance[11] on assessing uncertainty, as well as a basic uncertainty assessment for GHG inventory data. The goal of this tool is to help an entity understand the level of uncertainty within their emissions inventory and use that information to increase the quality of their GHG inventory.

The GHG Protocol includes an optional disclosure of information on the quality of the inventory, which would include information on causes and magnitude of uncertainties in emissions estimates. This optional disclosure is discussed further in section 6.2.

2.5 Organizational boundaries

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Glossary

Organizational boundaries: The boundaries that determine the operations owned or controlled by the reporting company, depending on the consolidation approach taken (equity or control approach).

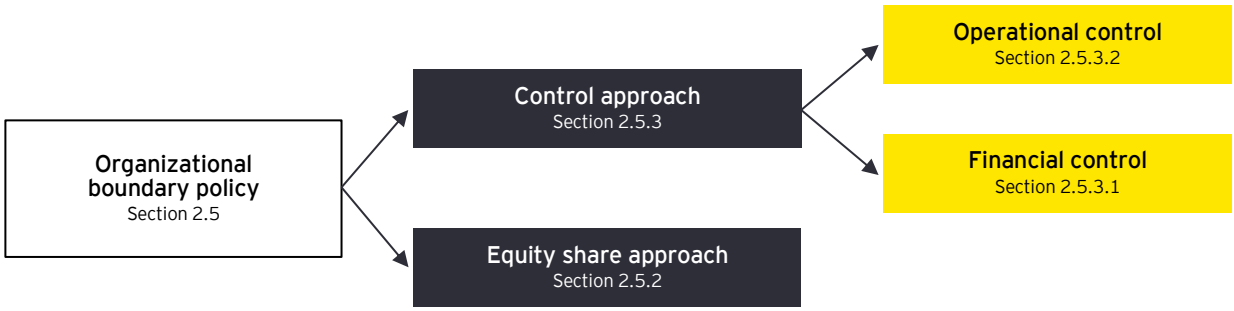
A reporting entity may have many different entities in its legal and organizational structure, which may include wholly owned subsidiaries, partially owned subsidiaries (e.g., joint ventures) and equity method investments. The GHG Protocol provides guidance on whether a reporting entity must include emissions from these various entities when accounting for and reporting emissions. The GHG Protocol refers to the process of identifying which entities to include as "setting organizational boundaries." The process is similar to the process to define the reporting entity for a set of financial statements for financial reporting (i.e., what entities to consolidate). That is, the organizational boundary selected determines which entities are included by the reporting entity for purposes of GHG emissions reporting.

The GHG Protocol allows a reporting entity to select one of two methods of setting organizational boundaries:

- The equity share approach (see section 2.5.2 below)
- The control approach (see section 2.5.3 below)

The GHG Protocol calls these methods consolidation approaches. For entities that wholly own and control all their operations, either approach will result in the same organizational boundary. However, for entities that have partially owned operations (or for entities that only have an economic interest in the operations without control), the organizational boundary identified, and therefore, the GHG emissions included in their inventory, can differ depending on the consolidation approach used.

Because control can be defined from an operational or financial perspective, the GHG Protocol further divides the control approach into the operational control approach and financial control approach. The decision tree below shows the options available to a reporting entity for determining its organizational boundary and the related section of this publication where these options are discussed further.



[11] https://ghgprotocol.org/sites/default/files/2023-03/ghg-uncertainty.pdf

2.5.1 Consistency in organizational boundaries

A reporting entity must consistently apply the selected approach throughout its entire legal structure. That is, when the parent is the reporting entity, one subsidiary of a parent cannot apply the equity share approach for its subsidiaries while another subsidiary of the same parent applies the operational control approach for its subsidiaries. Inconsistent application of the organizational boundary over time could result in misleading information.

A reporting entity may change the consolidation approach selected, but that change would be subject to the prior-year recalculation requirements discussed in section 2.7.2.1.

2.5.2 Equity share approach

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2

Glossary

Equity share approach: A consolidation approach whereby a company accounts for GHG emissions from operations according to its share of equity in the operation. The equity share reflects economic interest, which is the extent of rights a company has to the risks and rewards flowing from an operation.

Under the equity share approach, a reporting entity sets its organizational boundary based on its share of the equity of an owned or partially owned entity (i.e., the reporting entity includes the same proportionate share of emissions of the owned entity as its share of equity of the entity). The equity share percentage used by the reporting entity should reflect the extent of the rights the reporting entity has to both the risks and rewards generated by an owned entity. This percentage is often the same as the legal ownership share of the owned entity, but it may not be in all cases. For example, the equity share and ownership share will differ when the ownership share does not faithfully represent the economic interest in the owned entity.

The following example illustrates the application of the equity share approach.

Illustration 2-1: Using the equity share approach

Example 1

A reporting entity legally owns 75% of the equity of a subsidiary and has selected the equity share approach to determine its organizational boundary. The reporting entity has rights to the risks and rewards of 75% of the subsidiary.

In this scenario, the reporting entity reports 75% of the GHG emissions related to the subsidiary.

Example 2

A reporting entity legally owns 75% of the equity of a subsidiary, but the investors share disproportionately in the economic risks and rewards of the subsidiary. In this example, a contractual arrangement among the investors allocates 55% of the risks and rewards of the subsidiary to the reporting entity.

The reporting entity has selected the equity share approach to determine its organizational boundary. In this scenario, the reporting entity reports 55% of the GHG emissions related to the subsidiary.

2.5.3 Control approach

Under the control approach, a reporting entity includes within its organizational boundaries 100% of the emissions of operations over which it has control, regardless of the equity share or legal ownership share held by the reporting entity. For example, a reporting entity that has an equity share of 65% and control over a subsidiary would account for and report 100% of that entity's emissions using the control approach. Conversely, if the reporting entity has an equity share of 35% in an entity that it does not control, none of the emissions of the uncontrolled entity would be included in the reporting entity's Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG inventory.

The GHG Protocol provides two methods of determining control: financial control and operational control. The selected control approach must be used consistently throughout the entire organization and over time.

2.5.3.1 Financial control

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 3

Financial Control. The company has financial control over the operation if the former has the ability to direct the financial and operating policies of the latter with a view to gaining economic benefits from its activities.[2] For example, financial control usually exists if the company has the right to the majority of benefits of the operation, however these rights are conveyed. Similarly, a company is considered to financially control an operation if it retains the majority risks and rewards of ownership of the operation's assets.

Under this criterion, the economic substance of the relationship between the company and the operation takes precedence over the legal ownership status, so that the company may have financial control over the operation even if it has less than a 50 percent interest in that operation. In assessing the economic substance of the relationship, the impact of potential voting rights, including both those held by the company and those held by other parties, is also taken into account. This criterion is consistent with international financial accounting standards; therefore, a company has financial control over an operation for GHG accounting purposes if the operation is considered as a group company or subsidiary for the purpose of financial consolidation, i.e., if the operation is fully consolidated in financial accounts. If this criterion is chosen to determine control, emissions from joint ventures where partners have joint financial control are accounted for based on the equity share approach.

[2] Financial accounting standards use the generic term "control" for what is denoted as "financial control" in this chapter.

A reporting entity has financial control over another entity if it can control the entity to gain economic benefits from the entity's activities. Financial control is often obtained if the reporting entity has the right to the majority of the economic benefits of the operation. Similar to the concept of equity share above, the determination of financial control depends on the economic substance of the relationship rather than the legal ownership. That is, financial control is not determined by legal ownership but by whether the reporting entity holds the rights to the majority of the economic benefits of the operation (e.g., the risks and rewards of ownership of the entity's assets). For example, a reporting entity may have financial control over another entity that is a variable interest entity, even though it owns less than 50% of the other entity.

When joint financial control exists (e.g., a joint venture under US GAAP), emissions are accounted for using the equity share approach even when the financial control approach is applied throughout the remainder of the reporting entity.

How we see it

We believe that the determination of financial control will often be consistent with the determination of control for financial reporting purposes under US GAAP (i.e., if an entity is consolidated for financial reporting purposes, it will likely be included in the organizational boundaries under the financial control approach).

However, the financial accounting guidance on the assessment of control under US GAAP (and IFRS) has changed since the Corporate Standard was first issued. In addition, there are differences between US GAAP and IFRS. Therefore, there may be differences between the consolidation conclusion under the GHG Protocol's financial control approach and the conclusion for financial accounting.

2.5.3.2 Operational control

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 3

Operational Control. A company has operational control over an operation if the former or one of its subsidiaries has the full authority to introduce and implement its operating policies at the operation. This criterion is consistent with the current accounting and reporting practice of many companies that report on emissions from facilities, which they operate (i.e., for which they hold the operating license). It is expected that except in very rare circumstances, if the company or one of its subsidiaries is the operator of a facility, it will have the full authority to introduce and implement its operating policies and thus has operational control.

Under the operational control approach, a company accounts for 100% of emissions from operations over which it or one of its subsidiaries has operational control.

The GHG Protocol specifies that a reporting entity that applies the operational control approach needs to include any facility over which it has operational control, even if it is not the owner of the facility, in the organizational boundary. This is particularly relevant for leased assets and other assets that are operated under a contractual arrangement, as discussed further in section 2.5.5 below.

A reporting entity that elects to use the operational control approach determines control by whether it has the authority to introduce and implement operating policies at an operation or facility. Operational control does not mean that the reporting entity can make all decisions concerning the operation or facility. For example, operational control may include decisions about how the day-to-day functions are performed but may not include certain other significant decisions (e.g., financing decisions, buying/selling significant assets) otherwise relevant to the financial control conclusions.

Certain facilities or operations may be under joint financial control (e.g., joint ventures, joint operations). Under the operational control approach, a reporting entity needs to determine whether it can introduce and implement operating policies for each facility or operation to determine whether the joint operation is included in its reporting boundary. A reporting entity that has operational control over an operation will include 100% of the operation's emissions in its reporting boundary even though it only owns 50% of the joint venture.

2.5.4 Factors to consider when selecting an approach to determine organizational boundary

As described above, the GHG Protocol provides a reporting entity with flexibility in determining which consolidation approach to use when setting its organizational boundary. The GHG Protocol provides both a general principle as well as several factors for an entity to consider. A reporting entity should also consider whether it is required by applicable regulations to apply a prescribed consolidation approach.

Generally, absent any regulatory requirements to adopt a specific consolidation approach, an entity should select the approach that results in the organizational boundary that is most consistent with the entity's purpose for reporting under the GHG Protocol. For example, if an entity is internally reporting GHG emissions to management with a goal of reducing emissions, the operational control approach may be most appropriate since the entity reports emissions from operations it is able to control and, therefore, change to reduce emissions. Conversely, if a reporting entity is a company that invests in other companies but does not control any of the investments and has a goal of reporting its GHG emissions inventory to investors, the equity share would likely be more appropriate.

To support this general principle, the GHG Protocol provides factors to consider when determining which approach is most appropriate when setting the organizational boundary. These factors include:

- Does the selected approach reflect the commercial reality of an arrangement?
- Are there required reporting frameworks from governments or emissions trading programs that specify a specific organizational boundary must be used?
- Does the selected approach reflect the liability and risk management of the reporting entity?
- Does the selected approach align with financial accounting and reporting?
- Does the selected approach provide management with decision-useful information?
- Is the selected approach cost effective and is the relevant data available?
- Does the selected approach result in a complete emissions population?

We believe that a reporting entity generally will not be able to choose an approach that will satisfy all of the factors above. The best approach will be one that satisfies the factors that are most relevant and meaningful to the users of the GHG emissions information while remaining consistent with the general principle of meeting the reporting entity's purpose of reporting emissions.

Applying the operational control or the financial control approach can result in the same organizational boundary in some situations. However, the GHG Protocol provides examples of when the organizational boundary differs based on the control approach applied and notes this often may be the case in the oil and gas industry, which often has complex operating and ownership structures.

For example, a reporting entity may have less than a 50% interest in a joint operating agreement (JOA) but still serve as the lead operator of that JOA and, therefore, has operational control. If the reporting entity applies the operational control approach, it would include the JOA in its organizational boundary. If it applies the financial control approach, it would not include it.

Conversely, a reporting entity may own 75% of an entity but the minority owner has control over operating decisions so the reporting entity does not have operational control. In this example, a reporting entity applying the operational control approach would not include this entity in its organizational boundary, while a reporting entity applying the financial control approach would include it. Depending on the consolidation approach chosen by each entity (i.e., the majority and minority owners), emissions may be double counted or not counted at all. If the majority owner applies the financial control approach and the minority owner uses the operational control approach, the emissions would be double counted because each entity would include the emissions in its boundary. If the majority owner applies the operational control approach while the minority owner applies the financial control approach, neither entity would report emissions from the entity over which they share ownership.

How we see it

The most common consolidation approach that we observe entities apply when they report voluntarily is the operational control approach, since this often better aligns with their objective of voluntarily reporting the emissions that they can influence over time. However, this trend could change as new standards and regulations are introduced, which may specify which consolidation approach must be used for reporting GHG emissions. The determination of operational control often requires judgment and is based on the facts and circumstances of each entity and its operations.

2.5.5 Organizational boundary for specific situations

The selected consolidation approach is also used to determine whether emissions from contractual agreements, such as leased assets, outsourced operations or franchises, are included in a reporting entity's organizational boundary.

2.5.5.1 Leased assets

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 4

Leased assets, outsourcing, and franchises

The selected consolidation approach (equity share or one of the control approaches) is also applied to account for and categorize direct and indirect GHG emissions from contractual arrangements such as leased assets, outsourcing, and franchises. If the selected equity or control approach does not apply, then the company may account for emissions from the leased assets, outsourcing, and franchises under Scope 3. Specific guidance on leased assets is provided below:

- **Using equity share or financial control:** The lessee only accounts for emissions from leased assets that are treated as wholly owned assets in financial accounting and are recorded as such on the balance sheet (i.e., finance or capital leases).
- **Using operational control:** The lessee only accounts for emissions from leased assets that it operates (i.e., if the operational control criterion applies).

The determination of whether to include emissions from leased assets depends on the consolidation approach selected.

How we see it

Individuals preparing emissions reporting information may not have experience with lease classification and other financial accounting concepts. A reporting entity's accounting group should support the preparers of the emissions report in this analysis.

2.5.5.1.1 *Equity share or financial control approach*

When the equity share or financial control consolidation approaches are selected, determining whether to include leased assets in the organizational boundary depends on the type of lease identified for financial accounting purposes (using US GAAP or IFRS). The table below describes the related emissions accounting using the equity share or financial control consolidation approaches for lessees and lessors based on the lease type:

Lease classification as determined by ASC 842, *Leases*	Lessee	Lessor
Finance lease	Has financial control or equity ownership [i.e., the right-of-use asset (representing the right to the underlying asset that is effectively "wholly owned") is recognized on the financial statements]; therefore, related emissions are within the organizational boundary (i.e., reported as Scope 1 or Scope 2 emissions)	Does not have financial control or equity ownership; therefore, related emissions are not within the organizational boundary (i.e., reported as Scope 3, Category 13, *Downstream leased assets*)
Operating lease	Does not have financial control or equity ownership; therefore, related emissions are not within the organizational boundary (i.e., reported as Scope 3, Category 8, *Upstream leased assets*)	Has financial control or equity ownership; therefore, related emissions are within the organizational boundary (i.e., reported as Scope 1 or Scope 2)

How we see it

The Corporate Standard, which provides guidance for categorizing emissions from leased assets, was issued in 2004, well before the more recent US GAAP and IFRS standards on leases (i.e., Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 842 and IFRS 16, *Leases*) were issued. The distinction between lease classifications discussed in the Corporate Standard is based on the financial accounting guidance in effect in 2004 (i.e., ASC 840, *Leases*, and International Accounting Standard (IAS) 17, *Leases*). The lease classification guidance in ASC 842 is similar to that in ASC 840; therefore, the table above applies to lease classification under ASC 842. However, IFRS 16 removed lease classification for lessees (i.e., most leases are recognized and measured similar to leases classified as finance leases under US GAAP).

If a non-US GAAP lessee has leases that would be classified as operating leases under IAS 17 or ASC 842, we believe that when applying the equity share or financial control approaches the lessee should conclude that related emissions are not within the organizational boundary as indicated in the table above. Further, we believe if a lessee applies the short-term lease exemption under ASC 842 or IFRS 16 (or the leases of low-value assets exemption under IFRS 16), it should consider the arrangement to be an operating lease.

2.5.5.1.2 *Operational control approach*

Under ASC 842, a lessee has the right to control the use of an identified asset, which often demonstrates operational control. Therefore, when the operational control approach is used, a lessee includes the related emissions in its organizational boundaries and accounts for any direct emissions from the leased asset as Scope 1 emissions and any purchased energy used by the leased asset as Scope 2 emissions. Consequently, a lessor does not have operational control of the leased asset, so it accounts for the related emissions as Scope 3, Category 13, *Downstream leased assets*, emissions, if Scope 3 emissions are reported.

How we see it

When identifying whether an arrangement contains a lease under ASC 842, an entity determines whether the contract conveys the right to control the use of an identified asset for a period of time in exchange for consideration. This evaluation includes determining whether the customer has the right to direct how and for what purpose the identified asset is used throughout the period of use. Under ASC 842 (and IFRS 16), a lessee does not need to have a right to operate the underlying asset to have the right to direct how and for what purpose it is used. That is, the lessee may direct the use of an asset that is operated by the lessor.

For purposes of allocating GHG emissions, we believe a lessee's right to control the identified asset (i.e., direct how and for what purpose the identified asset is used) throughout the period of use generally demonstrates operational control of the asset under the GHG Protocol, regardless of whether the lessee or lessor operates the leased asset. See section 1.2, *Determining whether an arrangement contains a lease*, of our Financial reporting developments (FRD) publication, ***Lease Accounting***, for further discussion on identifying leases.

In a leased building with multiple tenants, there are often shared spaces among all of the building's tenants, such as the main floor lobby area and elevators. The determination of whether the tenant or landlord has operational control over these shared spaces is the basis for how the emissions from those shared spaces are accounted for. A reporting entity should consider whether, as a tenant of a building, it has influence (e.g., the ability to request certain actions from the landlord) or decision-making authority over the operation of the shared spaces in the leased building and could, therefore, have operational control over them. If the reporting entity determines that it has operational control of those spaces, under the operational control approach, it should account for the emissions from those spaces in its organizational boundary.

2.5.6 How the ESRS and ISSB standards define boundaries (updated June 2025)

How organizational boundaries are defined is an area where regulatory requirements could differ from the GHG Protocol.

Under the ESRS, a reporting entity is required to disclose emissions of the consolidated group (i.e., apply the financial control approach to consolidated entities). In addition, a reporting entity is required to report Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of equity method investments (called associates under IFRS accounting standards), joint ventures, unconsolidated subsidiaries and contractual arrangements that are joint arrangements not structured through an entity that it has operational control over (i.e., apply the operational control approach to unconsolidated entities). The ESRS also require an entity to disaggregate Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions for (1) consolidated entities and (2) equity method investments, joint ventures and other unconsolidated subsidiaries for which it has operational control.

Under the ISSB's standards, a reporting entity is required to follow the GHG Protocol when defining its organizational boundary (unless a jurisdictional authority or an exchange on which the entity is listed requires the use of a different method for measuring GHG emissions), disclose the approach used for calculating emissions and separately disclose Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions for (1) consolidated entities and (2) other investees, such as equity method investments, joint ventures and other unconsolidated subsidiaries.

2.6 Operational boundaries (updated September 2024)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

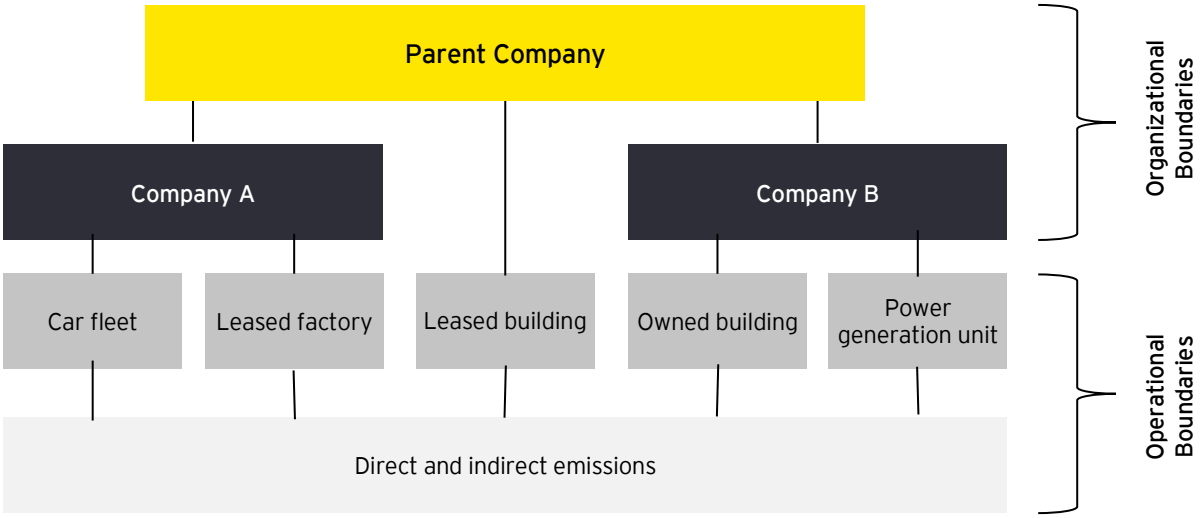
Glossary

Operational boundaries: The boundaries that determine the direct and indirect emissions associated with operations owned or controlled by the reporting company. This assessment allows a company to

establish which operations and sources cause direct and indirect emissions, and to decide which indirect emissions to include that are a consequence of its operations.

After a reporting entity sets its organizational boundary, the GHG Protocol requires it to determine its operational boundaries. This is the process of (1) identifying the emissions that relate to the reporting entity (which has been established by the organizational boundary), (2) determining if these emissions are direct (Scope 1) or indirect (Scope 2 or Scope 3) and (3) determining the extent of accounting for and reporting indirect emissions (i.e., which Scope 3 emissions, if any, are included in the GHG inventory and reported). Simply, this is the process of identifying and classifying GHG emissions within the organizational boundary.

The following graphic, which is based on Figure 2 in the Corporate Standard, illustrates the relationship between the organizational and operational boundaries of a company.



2.6.1 Identifying emissions associated with operations

To identify the emissions associated with operations, a reporting entity should consider all sources of emissions discussed within this publication in section 3.2 for Scope 1 emissions, section 4.2 for Scope 2 emissions and section 5.1 for Scope 3 emissions. All emissions should be identified for all operations of the reporting entity. This can be one of the most complicated aspects of accounting for emissions.

How we see it

Identifying a complete emissions inventory often requires collaboration between those preparing the emissions information, which is often performed at the corporate level, and those responsible for the day-to-day operations of a reporting entity's facilities.

The emissions reported by a reporting entity must be complete within the selected inventory boundary. Any exclusions must be clearly identified and justified, with any assumptions disclosed. Refer to section 1.4 for a discussion of exclusions. Adjusting operational or organizational boundaries to minimize emissions amounts is not appropriate.

As the sophistication of an entity's GHG calculation tools increases, its operational boundary may change over time. The GHG Protocol encourages companies to improve the precision of their reporting over time. See section 2.7.2 below for guidance on how a reporting entity should account for these changes over time. See section 2.7.3 below for guidance related to updating previously reported information that is considered to be an error.

2.6.2 Classifying emissions associated with operations and determining the extent of accounting and reporting for Scope 3 emissions

Each type of GHG emission is classified into a given scope. See section 1.3 for our discussion of the identification of direct and indirect emissions and a general discussion of classifying emissions into Scopes 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3. In addition, see section 1.5 above on the different reporting options for Scope 3 emissions under the GHG Protocol.

2.6.2.1 Classifying emissions associated with operations from leased assets (added September 2024)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 5

5.2.1 Leased assets

Energy use in leased buildings or from leased electricity generation assets can be a significant emissions source. To determine whether the assets' emissions are included in the inventory boundary and how they should be categorized by scope, companies should determine the entity that owns, operates, or exerts control over certain leased assets.

As noted in the Corporate Standard and its supplemental Appendix F (available at ghgprotocol.org), all leases confer operational control to the lessee or tenants, unless otherwise noted. Therefore, if a company is a tenant in a leased space or using a leased asset and applies the operational control approach, any energy purchased or acquired from another entity (or the grid) shall be reported in Scope 2. On-site heat generation equipment, such as a basement boiler, typically falls under the operational control of the landlord or building management company. Tenants therefore would report consumption of heat generated on-site as Scope 2. If a tenant can demonstrate that they do not exercise operational control in their lease, they shall document and justify the exclusion of these emissions.

Classifying emissions associated with operations from leased assets between Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions depends on the consolidation approach selected and the lease classification. See section 2.5.5.1 for guidance on determining whether emissions from leased assets are within the reporting entity's organizational boundaries (Scope 1 or Scope 2) or outside its organizational boundaries (Scope 3).

If an entity has determined that emissions from leased assets are within its organizational boundary, the determination of whether to classify those emissions as Scope 1 or Scope 2 emissions depends on who controls the source of the emissions. Any emissions from energy that is generated from sources that are controlled by the reporting entity (e.g., emissions from combustion in boilers that the reporting entity directly controls) are classified as Scope 1 emissions. Any emissions from energy that is purchased or acquired by the reporting entity (either from a third party or directly from a landlord) are classified as Scope 2 emissions (e.g., emissions from combustion in boilers that the landlord controls).

The following examples illustrate how a lessee may account for emissions generated from a leased asset.

Illustration 2-2: Classification of emissions from energy consumption in a leased building

Scenario 1: Company A uses the operational control approach to compile its GHG emissions reporting inventory. Company A leases an entire office building that contains a boiler in the basement that is used for heating. The rental agreement between Company A and its landlord specifies that Company A is responsible for maintaining and operating the boiler. Company A controls when the lights are on as well as the temperature within the building.

Company A reports the emissions from the boiler as Scope 1 emissions because it controls the boiler that is located on site. It reports emissions from energy that is purchased or acquired from another entity (the electricity) as Scope 2 emissions, as it has operational control over the building that uses the electricity.

Scenario 2: Consider the same facts as Scenario 1, but Company A only leases a floor of the building and the landlord contracts with a property management company to maintain and operate the on-site boiler. The lease agreement states that the landlord will maintain the temperature of the building at a predetermined temperature. Company A controls when the lights are on.

Company A reports the emissions from the boiler and electricity consumed as Scope 2 emissions. Although the boiler is located on site, Company A does not have control over it. As a result, the heat the boiler generates is considered purchased heat, so the emissions from the boiler are classified as Scope 2 emissions.

We believe that when classifying emissions from sources that are located on site at a leased facility, greater emphasis is placed on control of the asset generating the emissions instead of the location of the emissions generating equipment. A reporting entity that is a lessee needs to determine which party has ultimate control over the equipment that is generating the emissions to determine whether the emissions should be classified as Scope 1 or Scope 2 emissions.

2.7 Emissions over time

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Glossary

Base year: A historic datum (a specific year or an average over multiple years) against which a company's emissions are tracked over time.

The GHG Protocol is designed to enable reporting entities to track and report consistent and comparable emissions data over time. The first step to tracking emissions over time is the establishment of a base year. A base year is a benchmark against which subsequent emissions can be compared to create meaningful comparisons over time and may be used for setting GHG reduction targets.

To comply with the GHG Protocol principles of relevance and consistency, a reporting entity is required to establish and report a base year for its Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG emissions. A base year is only required for Scope 3 emissions when Scope 3 performance is tracked or a Scope 3 reduction target has been set. That is the case whether the entity is reporting under the Corporate Standard or the Scope 3 Standard (see section 1.5).

How we see it

The GHG Protocol encourages reporting entities to begin reporting GHG emissions information and improve the completeness and precision of that information over time. While the GHG Protocol requires a company to establish and report a base year for its Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions, a reporting entity that recently started to report GHG emissions information and has not established an emissions reduction target may choose not to set a base year until the precision and completeness of their emissions inventory have improved. In this situation, the reporting entity should disclose that a base year has not yet been established and the reason for not establishing a base year.

The GHG Protocol does not require a reporting entity to report prior-year information other than the base year, but it may elect to do so.

2.7.1 Base year selection (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 5

Companies shall choose and report a base year for which verifiable emissions data are available and specify their reasons for choosing that particular year.

Most companies select a single year as their base year. However, it is also possible to choose an average of annual emissions over several consecutive years.

Scope 2 Guidance

9.1 Setting a base year

Companies reporting according to the market-based method should choose a year in which both market-based data and location-based data are available. Companies that have already set a base year for scope 2 shall specify which method was used to calculate it, in order to allow for clearer comparison over time.

9.2 Recalculating base-year emissions

If the scope 2 base year chosen was calculated only according to the location-based method, the reporting entity should also recalculate a market-based total if contractual information or residual mix totals are available for the base year. If not, companies should state that the location-based result has been used as a proxy since a market-based result cannot be calculated.

If the scope 2 base year chosen was calculated only according to the market-based method, companies should ensure that the contractual instruments used in the base year meet the Scope 2 Quality Criteria. If not, this should be disclosed and a location-based total stated in place of the market-based method total. In addition, companies should calculate a location-based method total in the base year using emission factors appropriate for that year.

A reporting entity needs to choose a base year for which verifiable emissions data is available. The base year selected should be representative of the GHG emissions of the reporting entity. For example, a reporting entity that experienced significantly elevated levels of sales and operations in 2020 due to the COVID-19 pandemic should not select 2020 as a base year, since this base year would allow it to show significant reductions in emissions in subsequent years when sales and operations stabilized. The objective of establishing a base year is to allow a reporting entity and users to track progress against that year.

The GHG Protocol allows a reporting entity to create a base year using an average of annual emissions over several consecutive years. This approach may be selected to obtain a more representative emissions profile that smooths out unusual fluctuations in GHG emissions. Additionally, under the GHG Protocol, a reporting entity may adopt a policy that moves the base year forward every set number of years. While a moving base year may be more useful for an entity that is significantly growing, it does not allow users of the information to compare emissions over a longer period of time. A reporting entity also has the option to select a separate base year for each scope. The criteria for selecting the base year for each scope are the same as those for selecting a single base year.

As discussed in section 4 below, the GHG Protocol outlines two methods for calculating Scope 2 emissions: the location-based method (LBM) and the market-based method (MBM). The LBM represents the average emissions associated with the geographical location where the electricity is obtained, while the MBM reflects emissions linked to the energy procurement choices of the end consumer.

A reporting entity is required to disclose Scope 2 emissions using either the LBM or both the LBM and the MBM, depending on the nature of the energy markets in which it operates. If an entity discloses Scope 2 emissions using both the LBM and the MBM, the chosen base year for Scope 2 emissions should be one in which both market-based data and location-based data are available (if applicable and feasible). See section 4.3.1 for guidance on when to use these methods, section 4.4 for guidance on the LBM and section 4.5 for guidance on the MBM.

How we see it

While the GHG Protocol allows a reporting entity to select a separate base year for each scope, we believe a reporting entity should select a consistent base year for Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions, unless there is a supportable reason for having different base years. Such reasons could include a lack of available Scope 3 information for the base year selected for Scope 1 and Scope 2, or facts and circumstances that result in non-representative emissions for one scope in the year selected as a base year compared to the other scopes presented.

A reporting entity must disclose its selected base year (or years), as well as its rationale for selecting that year (or years).

2.7.2 Updating base year and prior-year (if reported and recalculated) emissions

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 5

Recalculating base year emissions

Companies shall develop a base year emissions recalculation policy, and clearly articulate the basis and context for any recalculations. If applicable, the policy shall state any "significance threshold" applied for deciding on historic emissions recalculation. "Significance threshold" is a qualitative and/or quantitative criterion used to define any significant change to the data, inventory boundary, methods, or any other relevant factors. It is the responsibility of the company to determine the "significance threshold" that triggers base year emissions recalculation and to disclose it.

Significance thresholds for recalculations

Whether base year emissions are recalculated depends on the significance of the changes. The determination of a significant change may require taking into account the cumulative effect on base year emissions of a number of small acquisitions or divestments. The GHG Protocol Corporate Standard makes no specific recommendations as to what constitutes "significant."

To achieve consistent and comparable emissions data over time, a reporting entity is required under the GHG Protocol to recalculate its base year to reflect the impact of significant events that have occurred. If other prior-year emissions data is included in the report, we believe a reporting entity should also recalculate those years or clearly disclose that they have not been recalculated and are, therefore, not comparable. However, consideration should also be given to the applicable reporting framework. For example, a reporting entity applying the ISSB standards would not restate prior periods when there has been a structural change in the reporting organization (such as an acquisition or divestiture). Rather, the ISSB standards require that sustainability reporting be for the same reporting entity as the related financial statements. Supplemental disclosures about the effect of the acquisition or divestiture may be appropriate.

A reporting entity should develop a base-year and prior-year emissions recalculation policy that describes the nature of events that would cause the base or prior years to be recalculated, as well as a significance threshold used to determine if the base and prior years require recalculation. Once this policy is developed, it should be consistently applied (e.g., for both increases and decreases in emissions) and disclosed. See section 2.7.2.3 for a discussion of setting a base year recalculation policy. Anytime a recalculation of base or prior years is performed, a reporting entity should also clearly disclose the context for why a recalculation was required.

2.7.2.1 Circumstances that require recalculation (updated September 2024)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 5

The following cases shall trigger recalculation of base year emissions:

- Structural changes in the reporting organization that have a significant impact on the company's base year emissions. A structural change involves the transfer of ownership or control of emissions-generating activities or operations from one company to another. While a single structural change might not have a significant impact on the base year emissions, the cumulative effect of a number of minor structural changes can result in a significant impact. Structural changes include:
  - Mergers, acquisitions, and divestments
  - Outsourcing and insourcing of emitting activities
- Changes in calculation methodology or improvements in the accuracy of emission factors or activity data that result in a significant impact on the base year emissions data
- Discovery of significant errors, or a number of cumulative errors, that are collectively significant.

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 9

9.3 Recalculating base year emissions

Companies are required to recalculate base year emissions when the following changes occur and have a significant impact on the inventory:

- Structural changes in the reporting organization, such as mergers, acquisitions, divestments, outsourcing, and insourcing
- Changes in calculation methodologies, improvements in data accuracy, or discovery of significant errors
- Changes in the categories or activities included in the Scope 3 inventory

The GHG Protocol requires a reporting entity to recalculate base-year data when the events or changes in circumstances listed below occur **and** the reporting entity's significance threshold is met, as discussed in section 2.7.2.3 below. A reporting entity should also recalculate any reported prior-year data or clearly disclose that those years have not been recalculated and, therefore, are not comparable.

- Structural changes to the reporting entity (such as divestments, mergers and acquisitions that affect the organizational boundary)
- Outsourcing and insourcing activities that shift emissions outside the reporting boundary

- Changes in calculation methodology
- Improvements in the accuracy of emissions factors or activity data
- Discoveries of an error or errors that are individually or collectively material
- Additions of new Scope 3 categories

If base-year emissions are not recalculated for these events and changes in circumstances, the reported emissions would indicate that the amount of GHG emissions from the same assets had changed over time to a greater extent than they really did. For example, improvements in the calculation methodology or data do not change the actual amount of GHG emitted into the atmosphere from the same assets in the past, but they make the measurement of those emissions more accurate. Therefore, such changes require recalculation of base-year data if the impact is material.

Only updating the current-year emissions for the better data or calculation methodology would make it appear as though the actual emissions had changed to a greater extent than they really did compared to the base year. Similarly, the discovery of an error in a prior reporting year does not change the actual amount of GHGs emitted into the atmosphere in that year, so the prior-year emissions should be recalculated. See section 2.7.3 below for discussion of correcting prior year errors.

In some circumstances more accurate data may be identified that cannot reasonably be applied to all prior years or is not available for every year presented. In these cases, a reporting entity may extrapolate the more accurate data input to all years presented or present unadjusted prior year numbers and disclose the use of the new data and when it was applied. This disclosure should be made each year the new and old data points are both presented. This disclosure aligns with the general GHG reporting principle of transparency.

Structural changes often shift emissions from one reporting entity to another without changing the actual amount of GHGs emitted into the atmosphere. The reporting entity that currently owns or controls the assets should report emissions from those assets in its base year or prior years (if recalculated) for comparison purposes. Therefore, a reporting entity needs to recalculate its base year for any significant acquisitions or divestments. Base- or prior-year recalculations should only be made for events that have occurred and not based on management's plans or expectations of future events.

Some outsourcing or insourcing arrangements also shift emissions from one reporting entity to another without changing the actual amount of GHGs emitted into the atmosphere. If a reporting entity is reporting Scope 1, Scope 2 or Scope 3 emissions, such arrangements would only change the scope of those emissions. However, as noted in section 1.5 of this publication, a reporting entity does not need to report Scope 3 emissions (or all relevant categories of Scope 3 emissions). Therefore, if outsourcing or insourcing arrangements shift emissions between Scope 1 or Scope 2 and a Scope 3 category that was not previously reported, recalculation of Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions for the base and prior years (if recalculated) to reflect this change is required, because not doing so would make it appear as though the Scope 1 or Scope 2 emissions decreased over time, instead of just being moved to a non-reported category.

Recalculation should also occur when the reporting entity has a Scope 1 and/or Scope 2 target or goal because the perceived reduction in Scope 1 or Scope 2 emissions does not reflect an actual reduction, and disclosure of such would not appropriately reflect the reporting entity's progress toward its target or goal. In addition, if a separate base year is selected for each scope, the base year needs to be recalculated for any changes between scopes due to insourcing or outsourcing arrangements.

The following example illustrates the base-year recalculation requirement for a structural change.

Illustration 2-3: Recalculation of a base year for structual change

Company A and Company B have prepared sustainability reports that report emissions in accordance with the GHG Protocol since 2018, and both have established a base year of 2018. Company C is a fully owned and controlled subsidiary of Company B. Below are the emissions generated by each entity.

	Reported in prior years				Not yet reported
GHG Emissions (metric tons of CO_2e)	**2018**	**2019**	**2020**	**2021**	**2022**
Company A	90	100	110	120	130
Company B (includes Company C emissions)	200	205	210	215	220
Total GHG emissions	**290**	**305**	**320**	**335**	**350**

Company C's emissions were:

	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022
Company C emissions (not reported separately)	20	20	20	20	20

In 2022, Company A purchased Company C from Company B. In 2022, when the acquisition occurred, Company A determined the impact of the acquisition of Company C met the significance threshold included within its base year recalculation policy. Therefore, Company A recalculated the base year and decided to optionally recalculate the prior years presented to make sure the presentation was consistent over time. Company B reached the same conclusion. The reports issued for 2022 presented the following information:

GHG emissions (metric tons of CO_2e)	**2018**	**2019**	**2020**	**2021**	**2022**
Company A (includes Company C emissions)	110	120	130	140	150
Company B (no longer includes Company C emissions)	180	185	190	195	200
Total GHG emissions	**290**	**305**	**320**	**335**	**350**

As illustrated above, Company A adjusted the base year and prior years presented for the impact of acquiring Company C and added the 20 metric tons of CO_2e generated by Company C in each year presented to its total emissions. Company B also adjusted the base year and optionally adjusted the prior years reported for the impact of divesting Company C and subtracted the 20 metric tons of CO_2e generated by Company C in each year presented.

Recalculation of the base year provides comparability of the current year emissions data with prior years. Without this adjustment, the acquisition of Company C would result in an apparent increase in emissions for Company A in 2022, and an apparent decrease in emissions for Company B in 2022. However, the actual GHGs emitted into the atmosphere (represented by the "total GHG emissions" line item above) remained unchanged over this period.

If Company A elected to only recalculate the base year and not the other prior years presented, it should clearly disclose that the prior years presented (other than the base year) have not been recalculated. The report issued for 2022 would present the following information:

GHG emissions (metric tons of CO_2e)	**2018**	**2019**	**2020**	**2021**	**2022**
Company A (includes Company C emissions)	110	100*	110*	120*	150

* The emissions presented for these fiscal years have not been recalculated to reflect the acquisition of Company C and, therefore, are not comparable to current year or base year emissions.

2.7.2.2 Circumstances that do not require recalculation

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 5

Base year emissions and any historic data are not recalculated for organic growth or decline.

Base year emissions are not recalculated if the company makes an acquisition of (or insources) operations that did not exist in its base year.

Structural changes due to "outsourcing" or "insourcing" do not trigger base year emissions recalculation if the company is reporting its indirect emissions from relevant outsourced or insourced activities.

The GHG Protocol does not require a reporting entity to recalculate base-year and prior-year (if recalculated) data when the following events or changes in circumstances occur:

- Organic growth or decline
- Acquired facilities that did not exist in the base year (or prior years if reported)
- Outsourcing or insourcing activities that only change the classification of reported emissions (i.e., insourcing and outsourcing activities that do not shift emissions outside the reporting boundary)

As discussed above, we believe the GHG Protocol's objective is for the base year and prior years (if recalculated) to be recalculated only when the actual amount of emissions in the environment has not changed over time and not adjusting the prior years would make it appear as though emissions had changed. The following events and circumstances reflect situations in which actual emissions change over time.

- The base year and prior years (if recalculated) are not recalculated to reflect the impact of organic growth (such as higher emissions due to increased use of existing facilities or increased emissions from newly constructed facilities) or an organic decline in operations (such as the closure of stores or facilities, as opposed to selling the stores, due to unfavorable economic conditions), since these changes reflect true changes in total GHG emissions over time.
- If a reporting entity acquires a facility or entity that came into existence after the base year, the base year would not be recalculated for the acquisition because there were no emissions from the facility or entity in the base year since it didn't exist yet. Instead, prior year data (if recalculated) would be recalculated from the date the acquired facility or entity came into existence. Similarly, the base year would not be recalculated for a divestment of a facility or entity that came into existence after the base year. Only the prior years (if recalculated) when the divested facility or entity was operating would be recalculated.
- If insourcing or outsourcing arrangements only change the classification of emissions among scopes that were previously reported by the reporting entity, base year and prior years (if recalculated) recalculation is not required. That is because these emissions were already reported by the reporting entity. For example, an outsourcing activity that shifts emissions between Scope 1 and Scope 3 emissions when an entity reports on all relevant Scope 3 categories does not require recalculation of the base year and prior years (if recalculated). However, we believe that a reporting entity should disclose that emissions were shifted between Scope 1 and Scope 3 due to an outsourcing arrangement to prevent the reported information from being misleading. If a separate base year is selected for each scope, the base year needs to be recalculated for any changes between scopes due to insourcing or outsourcing arrangements.

2.7.2.3 Setting a significance threshold for recalculation of the base year

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Glossary

Significance threshold: A qualitative or quantitative criteria used to define a significant structural change. It is the responsibility of the company/ verifier to determine the "significance threshold" for considering base year emissions recalculation. In most cases the "significance threshold" depends on the use of the information, the characteristics of the company, and the features of structural changes.

The GHG Protocol requires a reporting entity to set a significance threshold for determining when base year data should be recalculated. The significance threshold is a qualitative or quantitative (or combination of both) threshold used to evaluate whether base year data should be recalculated due to changes to data, organizational boundary, operational boundary, calculation methods or any other relevant changes, including those discussed in section 2.7.2.1 above. A significance threshold policy includes an assessment of structural changes and when data from such events is incorporated or removed from the reporting entity's emissions.

How we see it

While the GHG Protocol specifies that a qualitative or quantitative significance threshold should be used for determining when base year data should be recalculated, we believe in practice a significance threshold should often include both qualitative and quantitative criteria.

The significance threshold should be used to evaluate both individual changes as well as the aggregate impact of multiple events, because the cumulative impact of multiple small changes may result in base year data no longer being comparable.

A reporting entity should disclose its significance threshold. The level of detail included within this disclosure (e.g., quantitative significance threshold, qualitative considerations) may vary based on the goals of the reporting entity, as well as the importance of the threshold to the reported information. For example, if there has been a significant number of events requiring recalculation of the base year, a more detailed disclosure of the significance threshold is likely appropriate.

The GHG Protocol does not specifically address what the significance threshold should be. However, regulatory standards may include such guidance, so reporting entities should consider whether their reports would be subject to any regulatory requirements.

2.7.2.4 Timing of recalculations

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 5

When significant structural changes occur during the middle of the year, the base year emissions should be recalculated for the entire year, rather than only for the remainder of the reporting period after the structural change occurred.

If it is not possible to make a recalculation in the year of the structural change (e.g., due to lack of data for an acquired company), the recalculation may be carried out in the following year.

Base years, and prior years if reported, should be recalculated assuming the change occurred on the first day of the year. For example, if a structural change occurs in the middle of the year, the base year, other prior years recalculated and current year recalculations should be recalculated for the full year, rather than for the point in time the structural change occurred.

The GHG Protocol indicates that a recalculation should be made in the year of the structural change (e.g., acquisition, divestiture) if the data is available. If it is not possible to make a recalculation in the year of the structural change (e.g., due to lack of data for an acquired company), the GHG Protocol allows a one-year grace period and states that the recalculation may be carried out in the following year. We believe the reporting entity should disclose that the related recalculation was not made in the current year and why.

Depending on the emissions data availability of an acquired entity, it may take a reporting entity more than one year, as allowed by the GHG Protocol, to gather and incorporate data from structural changes into its reported metrics. Under these circumstances, a reporting entity should disclose the exclusions and boundary inconsistencies, as described in sections 2.5.1 and 6.1 of this publication. These disclosures should include the specific exclusions and justification for the exclusions, and they should clearly indicate that due to this inconsistency there may be significant excluded emissions, if applicable.

2.7.2.5 Subsequent events

The GHG Protocol does not provide guidance related to the presentation and disclosure of events that occur after the end of the reporting period but before the report is issued (i.e., subsequent events). We believe that in the absence of guidance, a reporting entity should establish and consistently apply a policy that indicates how it will report different types of subsequent events that occur after the reporting date but before the report is issued (e.g., structural changes, application of environmental attribute certificates).

2.7.3 Discovery of errors in prior years

As discussed in section 2.7.2.1 above, the GHG Protocol requires that a reporting entity recalculate base-year information for the discovery of errors that are material, either individually or in aggregate. If there is a subsequently discovered fact (i.e., a fact that, if known when the report was issued, would have resulted in different reported information) that impacts the base-year or any prior-year information, a qualitative and quantitative assessment of the materiality of the error should be performed. If the subsequently discovered fact existed as of the date of the report and has a material impact on previously reported information, it may be necessary to restate the previously reported information, and the assurance provider may need to withdraw and/or reissue their assurance report.

These considerations do not apply to other recalculation scenarios required by the GHG Protocol, such as recalculations due to acquisition or divestiture.

How we see it

An assessment of the materiality of updates to previously reported information over which assurance was provided requires judgement from both the reporting entity and the assurance provider. A reporting entity should work with its assurance provider when these situations are identified.

2.8 GHG emissions reductions

As entities make commitments to reduce their reported GHG inventory, they may implement multiple strategies, which could include reducing GHG emissions from sources within the entity's organizational boundary or acquiring and using GHG offsets to reduce their reported emissions and energy attribute certificates (EACs) to report emissions from low-emission sources, as discussed further in sections 2.8.3 and 2.8.2 below, respectively.

Different types of GHG reduction have different impacts on the calculation and reporting of a reporting entity's GHG emissions. The GHG Protocol describes different GHG reductions and provides reporting considerations and criteria.

2.8.1 GHG reductions from sources within an entity's organizational boundary

Under the GHG Protocol, projects that reduce GHG emissions from sources included in the reporting entity's organizational boundary do not need to be reported separately, unless the reduction is separated from the activity and sold or transferred as a credit or offset. In most cases, the effects of these types of internal emissions reduction projects (often called avoided emissions or avoidances) are captured as a reduction to an entity's Scope 1 emissions. Refer to section 3.3 below for discussion on calculating Scope 1 emissions.

Emissions reported as part of the GHG inventory are reported gross of any reductions that have been sold or transferred as offsets. The use of net emissions factors (i.e., emissions factors that include the impact of certain offsets) is not allowed by the GHG Protocol, because the impact of offsets must be reported separately from the Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions (i.e., reported gross). See our Technical Line, ***Accounting considerations for transactions and arrangements related to climate change initiatives***, for a discussion of how to account for the sale and purchase of these offsets for financial reporting purposes.

2.8.2 Energy attribute certificates (including renewable energy certificates)

EACs are tradeable certificates that are separable from the actual energy produced and evidence the type of energy produced and the related environmental attributes associated with the energy produced (e.g., the GHG emissions produced by the energy generation source). EACs are often issued (e.g., by a registry) when one megawatt-hour (MWh) of electricity is generated and delivered to the electricity grid from a renewable energy resource (e.g., solar, wind). The registry will issue the EAC and assign it a unique tracking number after verifying that the energy attributes meet the verification standard used by the specific registry. These registries can be owned and operated by regulators or independent third parties (e.g., Electricity Reliability Council of Texas (ERCOT)). Registries track the ownership of EACs as they are transferred between parties to prevent ownership disputes and ultimately make sure that only one entity can claim the related energy attributes upon retirement of the EAC.

EACs facilitate energy claims by entities that purchase power from the electric grid, since the entities often receive commingled electricity from different generation sources, with no way to trace the attributes of the specific energy received. However, the holder of an EAC can claim the attributes in the EAC (i.e., the emissions factor) for the commingled electricity it consumes from the grid.

Certain types of EACs are common to different geographical markets and include Guarantees of Origin (GOs), which are common in Europe, and renewable energy certificates (RECs), which are common in the US. EACs may be used by utilities to meet jurisdictional compliance requirements (e.g., Renewable Portfolio Standards (RPS)) or by other entities to demonstrate that they have used or supported power produced by renewable energy sources.

EACs can also be used voluntarily by entities or consumers to demonstrate that they have used or supported power produced by renewable energy sources, which may factor into their calculation of Scope 2 emissions under the market-based method. The Scope 2 market-based method to calculate GHG emissions takes into consideration an entity's energy procurement decisions (i.e., an entity can apply attributes from purchased EACs to reduce their market-based method Scope 2 emissions). Refer to section 4.5 below for discussion of the market-based method.

EACs used voluntarily are generally purchased in a jurisdiction that is oversupplied with EACs relative to EAC demand for any compliance purposes in that market. Some entities obtain EACs by investing in projects that generate EACs, or they may purchase EACs from a third party that generates EACs or from another holder in an open market. Many entities also use power purchase agreements (PPAs) or virtual power purchase agreements (VPPAs) to obtain EACs.

EACs include information such as the location where the energy was generated (e.g., the facility), the date the facility opened (certain states require that the energy be produced by "new" generating facilities, or have limits on the age), the type of energy source they came from (e.g., wind, solar), the date of generation and the date the EAC was produced. The date of generation is important because each EAC has a "vintage." Different jurisdictions may have different rules on how long an EAC may be used (i.e., when it expires). See section 2.8.2.3 below for a discussion of the Scope 2 quality criteria, which determine whether an EAC can be used when reporting under the GHG Protocol.

2.8.2.1 RPS compliance programs

There are three main types of RPS compliance programs: supplier disclosures, supplier quotas and tax exemptions. Some RPS compliance programs require energy suppliers to disclose to consumers the energy attributes associated with the delivered energy to substantiate their own differentiated product offerings (e.g., low-carbon or renewable energy sourced products). In other RPS compliance programs, energy suppliers may be required to source a specific portion of their energy from specified renewable energy sources. In these instances, EACs are submitted to substantiate compliance with the set quota. Other times, entities may be able to redeem EACs for tax credits or reductions (e.g., a reduction of their tax obligation), depending on the applicable tax code. EACs used for RPS compliance programs can only be issued by energy generation facilities that meet the eligibility requirements of the applicable jurisdiction's RPS legislation and are used to comply with the RPS in that jurisdiction.

2.8.2.2 Incorporation of EACs into Scope 2 emissions (single certificate systems vs. multi-certificate systems)

As discussed above in section 2.8.2, under the market-based method, EACs allow a reporting entity to report Scope 2 emissions from low-emission sources. For EACs to be used to reduce Scope 2 emissions, they must meet certain quality criteria, discussed in section 2.8.2.3 below. Additionally, the reporting entity must consider whether the EAC is generated in a single certificate system or a multi-certificate system. A single certificate system only issues one EAC for each MWh of energy generated.

A multi-certificate system issues multiple certificates for each MWh generated, with each certificate conveying a separate attribute of the energy that has been generated. If a multi-certificate system is used, only the EAC that contains the attribute of the GHG emissions can be used to reduce Scope 2 emissions, as the other attributes are not relevant to GHG accounting. Additionally, only one EAC containing the GHG emissions attribute should be generated from the system, otherwise multiple entities could claim the emissions reduction, which would double-count the reduction and is not allowed under the GHG Protocol.

2.8.2.3 Quality criteria (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 7

Table 7.1 Scope 2 Quality Criteria

All contractual instruments used in the market-based method for Scope 2 accounting shall:

1. Convey the direct GHG emission rate attribute associated with the unit of electricity produced.
2. Be the only instruments that carry the GHG emission rate attribute claim associated with that quantity of electricity generation.
3. Be tracked and redeemed, retired, or canceled by or on behalf of the reporting entity.
4. Be issued and redeemed as close as possible to the period of energy consumption to which the instrument is applied.

5. Be sourced from the same market in which the reporting entity's electricity-consuming operations are located and to which the instrument is applied.

In addition, utility-specific emission factors shall:

6. Be calculated based on delivered electricity, incorporating certificates sourced and retired on behalf of its customers. Electricity from renewable facilities for which the attributes have been sold off (via contracts or certificates) shall be characterized as having the GHG attributes of the residual mix in the utility or supplier-specific emission factor.

In addition, companies purchasing electricity directly from generators or consuming on-site generation shall:

7. Ensure all contractual instruments conveying emissions claims be transferred to the reporting entity only. No other instruments that convey this claim to another end user shall be issued for the contracted electricity. The electricity from the facility shall not carry the GHG emission rate claim for use by a utility, for example, for the purpose of delivery and use claims.

Finally, to use any contractual instrument in the market-based method requires that:

8. An adjusted, residual mix characterizing the GHG intensity of unclaimed or publicly shared electricity shall be made available for consumer Scope 2 calculations, or its absence shall be disclosed by the reporting entity.

7.5 Additional guidance on Scope 2 Quality Criteria

Where multiple countries or jurisdictions form a single market, a consistent means of tracking and retiring certificates, and calculating a residual mix, needs to be present in order to prevent double counting of GHG emission rates among electricity consumers. Accurate residual mixes should take into account the energy and emission mixes of all geopolitical entities engaged in trading certificates.

The Scope 2 Guidance includes Scope 2 quality criteria that all contractual instruments (including EACs) must meet to be used by a reporting entity in its market-based method Scope 2 emissions calculation. These Scope 2 quality criteria are intended to limit contractual instruments that can be used in the market-based method to those that reliably and uniquely convey GHG emission rate claims to the reporting entity. If a reporting entity includes contractual instruments that do not meet the Scope 2 quality criteria in its Scope 2 emissions under the market-based method, the reported metric is no longer calculated in accordance with the GHG Protocol and risks misleading the report users. In addition, a reporting entity should not present an adjusted total that includes those contractual instruments as a "workaround" to attempt to take credit for the lower emissions.

Further, some compliance programs or jurisdictions may require contractual instruments to meet additional quality criteria. Of the criteria established by the GHG Protocol, the first five are applicable to all contractual instruments, while criteria six through eight are specific to certain scenarios. The Scope 2 quality criteria included in the GHG Protocol are as follows:

Criteria 1 — Conveying GHG emission rate claims

The contractual instrument must include specific language documenting the ownership or ability to claim specific emissions attributes of the energy being generated. This includes the type and the amount of renewable energy claimed. The emissions factor of the energy can be conveyed either directly or implicitly.

Criteria 2 — Unique claims

The contractual instrument must be the only instrument with which the related GHG emissions attribute claim is associated. That is, no other contractual instruments can provide GHG emissions attributes for the specific energy generated. In a multi-certificate system, multiple certificates may need to be retired together to meet this quality criterion.

Criteria 3 — Retirement for claims

The contractual instrument must be tracked and then redeemed, retired or canceled by the reporting entity or on behalf of the reporting entity to reduce the reporting entity's emissions. The retirement, redemption or cancellation of contractual instruments can be tracked through a tracking system, third-party certification, contract audit, regulated trading schemes or other systems. This criterion is meant to make sure that only one reporting entity can claim the GHG emissions attributes of the energy produced, even though the contractual instrument that conveys those attributes may be held by various parties throughout its contractual life.

The GHG Protocol does not specify what is considered a retirement, redemption or cancellation of a contractual instrument, which may depend on the registry or tracking system used. Professional judgment is required to determine whether a contractual instrument has been retired for purposes of including it in the calculation of the Scope 2 market-based method. We believe that the best evidence of the retirement of a contractual instrument is a confirmation or certificate from a supplier or registry that the contractual instrument has been or will be retired by a certain date.

However, in some circumstances, immediate retirement may not be possible (e.g., when retirements can only be done at certain intervals, there is a delay in the receipt of the contractual instrument). Therefore, in these cases, we believe a reporting entity must control the contractual instrument (or be guaranteed their delivery for energy that has already been produced (e.g., have a contract that requires the supplier to deliver a specific number of EACs either through generation or purchase)) and an irrevocable decision to retire the contractual instrument must be made to apply the contractual instrument to the Scope 2 market-based method. If the instrument is subsequently not retired after the related emissions have been reported, it would be considered an error. The reporting entity would then need to assess the impact of the error on the previously reported amounts.

Criteria 4 — Vintage

The GHG Protocol indicates that a contractual instrument must include the date the related energy was generated, and that date must be "as close as possible" to the period of energy consumption to which the contractual instrument is applied. The GHG Protocol does not define "as close as possible," so professional judgment is required to determine what period meets this requirement. The GHG Protocol states that the timing should be consistent with any standards that exist in the market of the contractual instrument. Therefore, any specific vintage requirements for contractual instruments in regulatory programs or trading schemes must be followed by a reporting entity.

How we see it

One common approach in practice in the US for determining "as close as possible" is to use the requirements of the Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification,[12] which requires EACs to be generated in the reporting year (i.e., the year in which the EAC is applied to the Scope 2 market-based method), six months before the reporting year or three months after the reporting year (i.e., a 21-month window). Green-e is one of the largest global clean energy certification organizations.

We believe that a reporting entity should establish a policy defining what is "as close as possible," considering any applicable regulations when developing its policy, and apply that policy consistently.

[12] https://www.green-e.org/faq#:~:text=When%20do%20RECs%20expire%3F,the%20calendar%20year%20has%20ended.

Criteria 5 — Market boundaries

The contractual instrument must be generated from the same market in which the reporting entity's energy consuming operations are located for it to be applied against a reporting entity's emissions. The GHG Protocol states that a reporting entity should follow the market boundaries the regulatory, certification or issuing body has established for trading and redeeming, retiring or canceling the contractual instrument.

The US and Canada are often considered a single market, even though it is made up of several independent electric grids, because of its broad federal laws and regulations. Similarly, the European Union is often considered a single market, even though it is made up of several countries, because it has a common set of market rules and a regional connection. Additionally, some countries may explicitly state that EACs from a certain market are allowed to be used within those countries.

Criteria 6 — Utility- or supplier-specific emissions factors

If a utility- or supplier-specific emissions factor is used in the market-based method, the factor should be calculated based on actual energy delivered, and the utility or supplier should disclose whether and how EACs are used in the emissions factor calculation.

Specifically, utility- or supplier-specific emissions factors should only be used in the market-based method if:

- The utility is the utility provider for the reporting entity's site.
- The emissions factor only includes the effect of renewable energy for which the associated EACs are retired for general use and not otherwise sold (i.e., the emissions factor should not include the effect of EACs that are sold to a specific customer).
- The emissions factor includes all emissions from "electricity delivered" and not just emissions from energy generated by the utility (i.e., the emissions factor includes emissions from both energy generated by the supplier/utility and energy purchased by the supplier/utility).

A utility- or supplier-specific emissions factor may reflect EACs retired for compliance purposes, as long as those certificates convey the attributes for the public benefit and not a specific customer. A reporting entity should not calculate a supplier-specific emissions factor itself.

Criteria 7 — Direct contracts or purchasing emissions factors (i.e., direct contracts for electricity)

When a reporting entity purchases electricity directly from generators or consumes electricity generated onsite, it must make sure that that all contractual instruments conveying emissions claims are transferred to it and not another party. Direct contracts to purchase electricity include PPAs and VPPAs. PPAs and VPPAs often convey EACs to the customer.

However, if a direct contract or direct purchase does not convey EACs, a third party should verify that the contract and emissions claim are provided solely to the buyer. This verification makes sure that no other instrument conveys the related GHG emissions claim to another party for the electricity consumed by the buyer (i.e., avoids double counting). In addition, if the power purchased is resold, the reseller cannot claim the "use" of the emissions factors acquired through the PPA or VPPA.

Criteria 8 — Residual mix emissions factor

A residual mix emissions factor represents the grid average emissions factor after all claimed renewable energy on the grid has been removed. That is, a residual mix emissions factor is the result of removing the effects of EACs retired by customers and other claims to lower emissions energy sources (e.g., through direct contracts or purchases) from the average emissions factor for the specific market.

To present emissions using the market-based method, a reporting entity must use a reliable residual mix emissions factor, when it is available, for any electricity for which EACs or other claims to emissions attributes have not been applied. The use of a residual mix emissions factor results in only one entity taking credit for the EAC or other claim to the emissions attribute under the market-based method (i.e., entities that don't retire the EAC can't take the benefit for the renewable energy through a lower average emissions factor for the market). See section 4.5.1.4 below for additional guidance related to using a residual mix in the Scope 2 market-based method.

The availability of a reliable residual mix emissions factor will depend upon whether there is a systematic process for tracking and retiring certificates applied in all countries and jurisdictions that form a single market. When assessing the quality of a residual mix emissions factor, a reporting entity should confirm such a process exists in the relevant market.

2.8.2.4 Quality criteria for purchases of steam, heat and cooling

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Appendix A

The Scope 2 accounting concepts, methods, and examples referenced in this guidance are drawn primarily from, and apply primarily to, electricity purchasing and use. However, steam, heat, and cooling energy systems may also use contractual instruments to convey attributes and claims. For instance, companies may have contracts to receive heat or steam from providers that specify the fuel source and emission rate associated with their received energy. In addition, "green heat" certificates generated from biogenic fuel sources may be issued and traded independently from the energy flows and injection into the distribution grid.

Companies shall report emissions from the purchase and use of these energy products the same as for electricity: according to a location-based and market-based method, if the contractual instruments used meet the Scope 2 Quality Criteria as appropriate for gas transactions. These may be the same total where direct line transfers of energy are used.

The GHG Protocol allows reporting entities to use emissions factors based on contractual instruments (including EACs) in its market-based method Scope 2 emissions calculation of emissions from purchased steam, heat and cooling. However, these emissions factors must meet the quality criteria described in section 2.8.2.3 above.

How we see it

The markets for contractual instruments related to purchased stream, heat and cooling are often relatively immature compared to electricity markets. As such, it will likely be very challenging for reporting entities to meet the Scope 2 Quality Criteria for instruments related to purchased stream, heat and cooling.

Contractual instruments can also be created for other energy sources, such as the production of renewable natural gas or aviation fuel, that produce Scope 1 emissions. EACs for other energy sources can be disclosed separately from Scope 1 or Scope 3 information, but the emissions factor within these EACs cannot be used to calculate emissions reported under the GHG Protocol.

2.8.3 Offsets

Offsets (also referred to in the GHG Protocol as "offset credits," "GHG offsets" or "verified emission reductions") are generated through verified projects that reduce, remove or avoid GHG emissions and are used to compensate (i.e., offset) GHG emissions from elsewhere that are included in a reporting entity's inventory. Unlike EACs, offsets do not confer any claims or attributes about energy consumed, but instead represent metric tons of CO_2 reduced, removed or avoided by a qualifying project.

Under the GHG Protocol, offsets are reported separately from the reporting entity's Scope 1, Scope 2 or Scope 3 emissions inventory. That is, a reporting entity's emissions are reported gross of the impacts of any offsets. We believe a reporting entity may separately disclose a net organizational emissions metric that shows the impact of purchased offsets. We also believe a reporting entity may allocate carbon offsets to certain classifications of emissions (e.g., Scope 1, Scope 2, Scope 3).

How we see it

The GHG Protocol does not include quality guidance for carbon offsets similar to the quality criteria for EACs. We believe the Scope 2 quality criteria (see section 2.8.2.3) are useful and should be considered when evaluating the quality and treatment of carbon offsets an entity chooses to apply to its emissions inventory for purposes of calculating a separate metric from its reported inventory emissions.

Offsets are often purchased or acquired from external parties. Different types of offsets and how they are quantified, verified and reported are described in the sections below.

2.8.3.1 Avoidance offsets

Avoidance offsets are generated from projects that reduce or avoid emissions by preventing their release into the atmosphere. For example, activities such as limiting timber harvest levels or capturing methane emitted from landfills could be verified and generate avoidance offsets. Avoidance offsets are quantified by calculating the difference between the emissions avoided as a result of the project and a baseline scenario. The baseline scenario represents what would have happened in the absence of the project. There is inherent judgment and subjectivity involved in determining the baseline scenario because it represents a hypothetical scenario.

2.8.3.2 Removal offsets

Removal offsets are generated from projects that focus on the removal and/or storage of GHG emissions. These types of projects include afforestation (i.e., planting a forest to store greenhouse gases) or carbon capture and sequestration. Removal offsets are quantified by determining the emissions removed or stored by the project activity.

2.8.3.3 Fundamental characteristics of offsets

The GHG Protocol for Project Accounting, which is not covered in this publication, requires the project activities that generate offsets to demonstrate the concept of additionality. That is, GHG reductions should only be recognized for project activities and related GHG reductions that would not have happened otherwise. While certain project activities might reduce emissions compared to historical levels, the GHG reductions do not have additionality if the emissions reductions do not differ from what otherwise would have happened in the baseline scenario (e.g., because of regulatory requirements). The GHG Protocol for Project Accounting acknowledges there is subjectivity in demonstrating additionality in a project activity and provides the following examples of possible tests for additionality. Table 3.1 from the GHG Protocol for Project Accounting describes possible tests to determine additionality, as follows:

TABLE 3.1 Examples of possible "tests" for additionality

TEST	GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE TEST AS IT IS COMMONLY FORMULATED
Legal, Regulatory, or Institutional Test	The GHG project must reduce GHG emissions below the level required (or effectively required) by any official policies, regulations, guidance, or industry standards. If these reductions are not achieved, the assumption is that the only real reason for doing the project is to comply with regulations, and any claimed GHG reductions are not additional.
Technology Test	The GHG project and its associated GHG reductions are considered additional if the GHG project involves a technology that is not likely to be employed for reasons other than reducing GHG emissions. The default assumption is that for these technologies, GHG reductions are a decisive reason (if not the only reason) for implementing them. GHG projects involving other technologies could still be considered additional, but must demonstrate additionality through some other means.
Investment Test	Under the most common version of this test, a GHG project is assumed to be additional if it can be demonstrated (e.g., through the divulgence of project financial data) that it would have a low rate of return without revenue from GHG reductions. The underlying assumption is that GHG reductions must be a decisive reason for implementing a project that is not an attractive investment in the absence of any revenue associated with its GHG reductions. A GHG project with a high or competitive rate of return could still be additional, but must demonstrate additionality through some other means.
Common Practice Test	The GHG project must reduce GHG emissions below levels produced by "common practice" technologies that produce the same products and services as the GHG project. If it does not, the assumption is that GHG reductions are not a decisive reason for pursuing the project (or conversely, that the only real reason is to conform to common practice for the same reasons as other actors in the same market). Therefore, the GHG project is not considered to be additional.
Timing Test	The GHG project must have been initiated after a certain date to be considered additional. The implicit assumption is that any project started before the required date (e.g., before the start of a GHG program) could not have been motivated by GHG reductions. Under most versions of this test, though, GHG projects started after the required date must still further establish additionality through some other test.

In addition to the concept of additionality, a reporting entity should assess the risk of reversibility for GHG reductions from project activities that are reported as offsets. This risk is primarily related to project activities achieving GHG reductions through the removal or storage of GHGs (i.e., removal offsets). The Corporate Standard suggests that an entity should assess whether the project's GHG reductions might be temporary (i.e., reversed) at some point in the future whereby the GHGs are returned to the atmosphere through either intentional or unintentional actions (e.g., the harvesting of timber earlier than contemplated in the design of the project, forest fires). The risk of reversibility may be mitigated through specific actions incorporated into the design of the project activities and should be considered when verifying the offset.

2.8.3.3.1 Identification and quantification of secondary effects

Unintended changes in GHG emissions may result from projects that generate the offsets. These emissions changes are called secondary effects. If significant, the impact of secondary effects should be included in the calculation of the offset.

2.8.3.4 Verification of offsets

Offsets can be verified, certified and/or approved by an external GHG program, such as a carbon registry. Carbon registries or other external GHG programs track offset projects, verify those projects and issue offset credits for each emission reduction or removal that is verified. The purpose of these registries is to track offsets to avoid double counting and to enable entities to sell, trade and retire these offsets.

3 Scope 1 emissions

3.1 Definition

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 4

Scope 1: Direct GHG emissions

Direct GHG emissions occur from sources that are owned or controlled by the company, for example, emissions from combustion in owned or controlled boilers, furnaces, vehicles, etc.; emissions from chemical production in owned or controlled process equipment.

Scope 1 emissions are emissions from sources owned or controlled by a reporting entity. For example, emissions from equipment, a vehicle or production processes that are owned or controlled by the reporting entity are considered Scope 1 emissions. These emissions include all direct emissions within the entity's inventory boundary. The combination of organizational and operational boundaries make up a reporting entity's inventory boundary, which is also called the reporting boundary. Refer to section 2.5 above for information on organizational boundaries and section 2.6 above for information on operational boundaries.

The GHG Protocol is designed to avoid double counting GHG emissions. That is, two or more reporting entities should never account for the same emissions as Scope 1 emissions. For example, emissions from the generation of heat, electricity or stream that is sold to another entity are not subtracted from Scope 1 emissions but are reported as Scope 2 emissions by the entity that purchases the related energy. Theoretically, if every entity and individual throughout the world reported their GHG emissions using the same organizational boundary (e.g., equity share, financial control or operational control approach), the total of all Scope 1 emissions would equal the total GHGs emitted throughout the world.

3.2 Types of Scope 1 emissions

The GHG Protocol describes four types of Scope 1 emissions: stationary combustion, mobile combustion, process emissions and fugitive emissions. The type of emissions that are included in Scope 1 will vary based on the industry and business model of the reporting entity. For example, an office-based reporting entity that leases its facilities under operating leases may only have material Scope 1 emissions from mobile combustion because they own or operate a fleet of sales and delivery vehicles, whereas a manufacturing reporting entity may have Scope 1 emissions of all types, such as those from mobile combustion from the operation of on-site forklifts, stationary combustion from the operation of on-site dryers that are part of the manufacturing process, fugitive emissions from on-site refrigeration units and process emissions from off-gassing from the product as it goes through the manufacturing process. The GHG Protocol includes optional calculation tools for each of these emission categories.[13]

[13] https://ghgprotocol.org/calculation-tools#cross_sector_tools_id

3.2.1 Stationary combustion

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Glossary

Stationary combustion: Burning of fuels to generate electricity, steam, heat, or power in stationary equipment such as boilers, furnaces etc.

Stationary combustion is the combustion of fuels in stationary equipment owned or controlled by the reporting entity. Stationary equipment can include boilers, furnaces, burners, turbines, heaters, incinerators, generators and engines. Stationary combustion emissions are often created as part of the process to generate heat, electricity or steam. However, emissions from the generation of purchased or acquired heat, electricity or steam consumed by the reporting entity are Scope 2 emissions. Refer to chapter 4 of this publication for discussion of Scope 2 emissions.

3.2.2 Mobile combustion

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Glossary

Mobile combustion: Burning of fuels by transportation devices such as cars, trucks, trains, airplanes, ships etc.

Mobile combustion is the combustion of fuels in mobile equipment owned or controlled by the reporting entity. Mobile equipment can include ground vehicles, ships and planes. Mobile combustion emissions are often created during the transportation of personnel, materials, products and waste.

3.2.3 Process emissions

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Glossary

Process emissions: Emissions generated from manufacturing processes, such as the CO_2 that is arises from the break-down of calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) during cement manufacture.

Process emissions are emissions created by physical or chemical processing used by a reporting entity to manufacture or refine materials. These emissions also include emissions generated by processing waste. Examples of process emissions include CO_2 emitted from manufacturing concrete and PFCs emitted from smelting aluminum.

3.2.4 Fugitive emissions

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Glossary

Fugitive emissions: Emissions that are not physically controlled but result from the intentional or unintentional releases of GHGs. They commonly arise from the production, processing, transmission, storage and use of fuels and other chemicals, often through joints, seals, packing, gaskets, etc.

Fugitive emissions are intentional and unintentional releases of GHGs from equipment and property owned or controlled by the reporting entity. These releases include equipment leaks, such as those from air conditioners or refrigerators, as well as emissions from coal piles, pits, wastewater treatment ponds, cooling towers and gas processing facilities.

3.2.5 Biogenic emissions

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 4

Direct CO_2 emissions from the combustion of biomass shall not be included in Scope 1 but reported separately (see chapter 9).

Glossary

Biofuels: Fuel made from plant material, e.g. wood, straw and ethanol from plant matter

Appendix B

Sequestered atmospheric carbon

During photosynthesis, plants remove carbon (as CO_2) from the atmosphere and store it in plant tissue. Until this carbon is cycled back into the atmosphere, it resides in one of a number of "carbon pools." These pools include (a) above ground biomass (e.g., vegetation) in forests, farmland, and other terrestrial environments, (b) below ground biomass (e.g., roots), and (c) biomass-based products (e.g., wood products) both while in use and when stored in a landfill.

Carbon can remain in some of these pools for long periods of time, sometimes for centuries. An increase in the stock of sequestered carbon stored in these pools represents a net removal of carbon from the atmosphere; a decrease in the stock represents a net addition of carbon to the atmosphere.

Biomass contains carbon that was initially removed from the atmosphere through photosynthesis and includes wood, vegetation and roots. Biomass also includes biofuels. The GHG protocol requires a reporting entity to exclude direct CO_2 emissions generated from the combustion of biomass and biofuels from its Scope 1 emissions. However, the direct CH_4 and N_2O emissions generated by the combustion of biomass should be included in Scope 1 emissions.

3.3 Calculation of Scope 1 emissions

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 6

Once the inventory boundary has been established, companies generally calculate GHG emissions using the following steps:

1. Identify GHG emissions sources
2. Select a GHG emissions calculation approach
3. Collect activity data and choose emission factors
4. Apply calculation tools
5. Roll-up GHG emissions data to corporate level.

The first step to calculate Scope 1 emissions is to identify all sources of Scope 1 emissions included in the categories listed in section 3.2 above within a reporting entity's inventory boundary. Once all the sources have been identified, a reporting entity needs to determine a calculation approach. There are multiple methods for calculating GHG emissions, including the following:

- Direct monitoring (i.e., measuring the concentration of GHGs and the rate of emissions from operations and processes)
- Calculating emissions based on a mass balance equation (i.e., an equation balancing the material entering and leaving a system based on the law of physics that matter cannot be created nor destroyed) or stoichiometric equation (i.e., an equation using the reactants and products in a balanced chemical equation) specific to a process or facility, often based on the inputs consumed
- Estimating the GHGs emitted using activity data and emissions factors

When determining which calculation approach to use, a reporting entity should select the most accurate calculation approach available that is consistent with the GHG Protocol's reporting objectives, which acknowledge that reporting emissions should not be prohibitively expensive. For example, many reporting entities do not have the equipment or information needed to apply the direct monitoring or mass balance/stoichiometric equation calculation approaches. Therefore, estimating GHG emissions using activity data and emissions factors is currently the most common approach used by reporting entities. However, regulators may require a reporting entity to monitor or measure emissions data for regulatory reporting purposes (e.g., the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) may require some entities to monitor certain emissions using a direct monitoring approach). A reporting entity should consider all available emissions data when determining the correct calculation approach to use.

The formula to calculate Scope 1 emissions in metric tons of the relevant GHG (tGHG) based on activity data and emissions factors is as follows:

Activity data *Section 3.3.1* **X** **Emissions factor** *Section 3.3.2* **=** **tGHG**

However, as discussed in section 2.2 above, the GHG Protocol considers CO_2e to be the universal unit of measurement for GHGs. Therefore, the calculated metric tons of the relevant GHG needs to be converted to metric tons of CO_2e by applying the GWP of the applicable GHG, which can be simplified to the following formula to calculate Scope 1 emissions in metric tons of CO_2e (tCO_2e):

Activity data *Section 3.3.1* **X** **Emissions factor** *Section 3.3.2* **X** **GWP** *Section 2.2.1* **=** **tCO_2e** *Section 2.2*

These formulas are also used to calculate Scope 2 (section 4.3) and certain Scope 3 emissions.

3.3.1 Activity data

Activity data is the number of times that a specific activity occurs for which an emissions factor is available and can be applied. For Scope 1 emissions, activity data is often denominated in fuel consumed (e.g., gallons of gasoline, cubic feet of natural gas) or units of product produced. The activity data that a reporting entity obtains will depend on the nature of the operations of the reporting entity. For example, industrial reporting entities will likely require different or additional activity data than a reporting entity in a non-industrial sector. For example, an industrial reporting entity may need to calculate the rate of GHG emissions from a production process, which can be directly monitored.

Actual activity data, such as the amount of fugitive emissions emitted by an office building air conditioning system, may not always be available. In such cases the reporting entity should estimate the relevant activity data. If significant, the nature of these estimates should be disclosed, as discussed in section 3.4.1 below.

3.3.2 Emissions factors (updated June 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Glossary

Emission factor: A factor that converts activity data into GHG emissions data (e.g., kg CO_2e emitted per liter of fuel consumed, kg CO_2e emitted per kilometer traveled, etc.).

An emissions factor is a value that represents the quantity of a specific GHG (or CO_2e) emitted for a specific unit of activity. For example, CO_2 emissions by fuel type for specific vehicles are common emissions factors used for calculating Scope 1 mobile emissions.

Emissions factors may come from third parties or be internally developed. When using third-party emissions factors, a reporting entity should use emissions factors, where possible, that are publicly available.

A reporting entity should assess all emissions factors used, whether internally developed (i.e., custom) or third-party maintained, for appropriateness and reliability. Questions to consider when making this assessment may include:

- Who issued the emissions factors? Are they a reputable organization? Do they have the appropriate expertise to issue emissions factors?
- What is the underlying data for the emissions factors and calculation methodology used? Is the underlying data credible and supported?
- What years do they represent? Are there any lags? How often are they updated?
- What is the boundary for the emissions factors? Are they geographical/industry-specific?
- What are the units of the emissions factors? Which GWP are incorporated?
- Is the nature of the emissions factor appropriate given the activity data being used (e.g., fuels can have both stationary and mobile combustion emissions factors, so the correct factor should be selected)?

Not all of the considerations above are relevant for each type of emissions factor. If a company chooses to use internally developed emissions factors, additional effort will be necessary to assess the appropriateness of using such factors.

A reporting entity should pay particular attention to the units of measurement for third-party emissions factors. For example, emissions factors may be presented in a different measurement of the activity than the underlying data (e.g., gallons vs. liters of fuel).

There may be times when a reporting entity utilizes an emissions factor that is based on a unit of measurement that cannot be easily applied to the underlying data (e.g., a volume-based factor of gallons of diesel to a combustion-based factor of MMBtu, a distance-based factor of miles driven to a volume-based factor of liters of gasoline). However, there may be a conversion factor that translates the emissions factors into the same units as the activity data or vice versa. In these circumstances, it is important to understand the different factors that impact the emissions factors and conversion factors, such as the efficiency or method of combustion.

For example, depending upon the source of the fuel, conversion factors may be presented as a single value or as a range of values (e.g., Lower Heating Value (LHV) and/or Higher Heating Value (HHV)). A reporting entity should document the conversion factors used as well as the rationale and assumptions made for using them and assess their appropriateness. An understanding of the units of measurement of the emissions factors and any necessary conversion is critical to calculating accurate Scope 1 emissions.

Third parties may periodically update the published emissions factors based on updated or more precise data. When multiple vintages (e.g., year the emissions factor was published) of an emissions factor are available, the GHG Protocol does not specifically require the use of the most recent emissions factor. However, the GHG Protocol requires a reporting entity to use the most appropriate, accurate and precise and highest quality emissions factor available for each calculation. We believe that when multiple vintages of emissions factors are available, a reporting entity should use the most recent emissions factor for the full period presented unless an earlier emissions factor is the most appropriate, accurate and precise and highest quality in the specific circumstances. However, if emissions factors are issued after the company has begun its emissions inventory calculation, it may not be practical for an entity to apply the newly issued emissions factors. A reporting entity should develop a policy for when it updates newly issued emissions factors. Additionally, if an emissions factor is updated during the year, we believe a single emissions factor (e.g., the new or the old based on facts and circumstance) should be used for the full year to be comply with the GHG Protocol's consistency principle (see section 1.4 above).

How we see it

Certain publicly available emissions factors include a GWP used to convert the related emissions to CO_2e. The GWP used in an emissions factor may not be based on the most recent GWP values published by the IPCC (i.e., currently, the AR6 of the IPCC, issued in April 2022). We believe a reporting entity may use emissions factors that are based on a previous version of the GWP factors published by the IPCC (i.e., the AR4 or AR5) if the difference in the reported information is not significant to the users of the sustainability information. We believe a reporting entity generally should not manually update a publicly available emissions factor for an updated GWP because that would introduce additional risk into the emissions calculation. See section 2.2.1 above for additional information on GWPs.

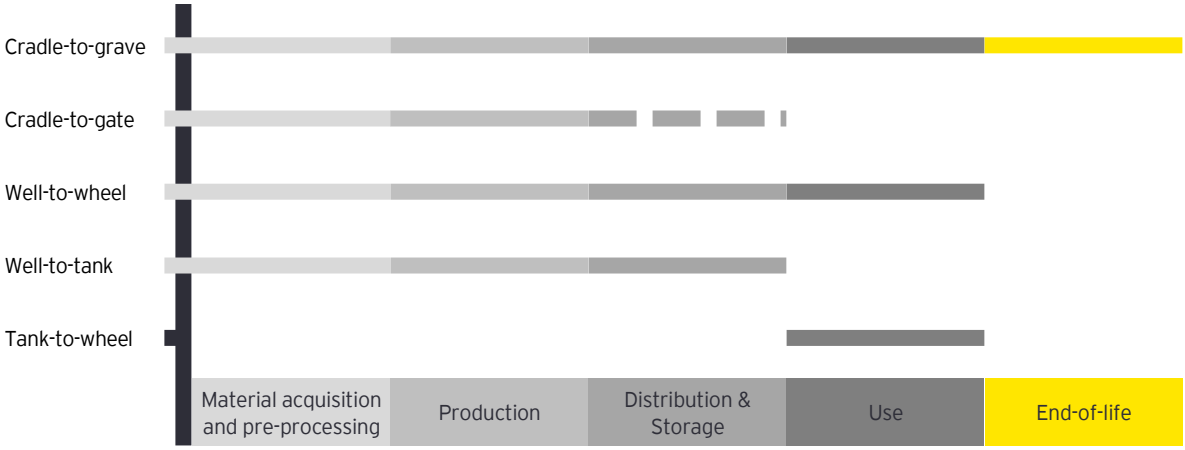
We believe a reporting entity should disclose the emissions factors used to provide users of the sustainability information with appropriate context related to the reported emissions. To the extent an internally developed emissions factor is used, more detailed disclosures are warranted to be consistent with the GHG Protocol's transparency principle (see section 1.4 above). A disclosure about an internally developed emissions factor may include a description of the underlying data, calculation methodologies, units, time period, boundaries, and any adjustments because this information would not otherwise be available to a user of the sustainability information as it would be for a publicly available third-party emissions factor.

3.3.2.1 Different forms of emissions factors (e.g., considering radiative forcing, lifecycle stages, heating value) (updated October 2025)

When multiple forms of an emissions factor are available, a reporting entity needs to consider which form aligns with the minimum boundary and/or its reporting goals. A few examples include:

- Radiative forcing is described as the degree of harm to the atmosphere and is often considered by the applied GWP. For example, greenhouse gases emitted at higher altitudes often have a higher GWP. For GHG emissions calculations, the Scope 3 Guidance indicates that "for air travel emission factors, multipliers or other corrections to account for radiative forcing may be applied to the GWP of emissions arising from aircraft transport. If applied, companies should disclose the specific factor used."

- Emissions factors may include various stages of a product's lifecycle. While the terms used to describe these emissions factors vary based on the product, the concepts remain the same. The following graphic, which is based on Figure 7.2 in the Product Life Cycle Accounting and Reporting Standard[14] (Product Standard), compares well-to-wheel, well-to-tank and tank-to-wheel emissions factors to clarify the emissions associated with the lifecycle of transportation, and compares cradle-to-grave and cradle-to-gate emissions factors to clarify emissions associated with the lifecycle of products.



  - Cradle-to-grave emissions include the entire lifecycle of emissions from the extraction of raw materials through the end of life of a purchased good. This includes all upstream emissions associated with sourcing, manufacturing and delivering the product, emissions generated during the use of the product, and all emissions associated with the disposal of the product.
  - Cradle-to-gate emissions include all emissions from the extraction of raw materials through production and transportation, up to the point of receipt by the reporting entity. This includes all upstream emissions associated with sourcing, manufacturing and delivering a purchased good until the reporting entity takes ownership or control of the purchased good, typically at its facility or warehouse. Determining the point of receipt depends on whether the supplier or the reporting company is responsible for transportation costs. Refer to section 5.7.1.5 for more guidance on how to determine the point of receipt.
  - Well-to-wheel emissions include the entire lifecycle of emissions from the extraction, processing and transportation of fuel products through the end use (combustion).
  - Well-to-tank emissions include all emissions from the extraction, processing and transportation of fuel products up to the point of receipt by the reporting entity. This includes all upstream emissions associated with fuel products until the reporting entity takes ownership or control. Determining the point of receipt depends on whether the supplier or the reporting company is responsible for transportation costs. Refer to section 5.7.1.5 for more guidance on how to determine the point of receipt.
  - Tank-to-wheel emissions include only the emissions from the combustion of fuel products (use-phase emissions).

[14] The Product Life Cycle Accounting and Reporting Standard can be used to understand the full lifecycle emissions of a product. https://ghgprotocol.org/product-standard

- The LHV of a fuel refers to the amount of heat released when it is burned, excluding the heat from water vapor produced during combustion, while the HHV includes the heat from that water vapor. That is, LHV assumes the water vapor escapes without being captured as usable heat, whereas HHV assumes it is captured and contributes to the total heat released. As such, the numerical value of HHV is always higher than LHV. LHV is often used in situations where the water vapor cannot be condensed and recovered as heat, such as in most internal combustion engines, while HHV is used when the water vapor can be condensed and its heat can be captured, such as in high-efficiency boilers.

3.3.3 Calculation tools

The GHG Protocol provides several calculation tools (generally spreadsheets) on their website[15] to assist reporting entities in calculating Scope 1 emissions. The use of these tools is optional and not required by the GHG Protocol. These tools are divided into three categories applicable to corporate entities:

- Cross-sector tools: Tools that can be applied regardless of the sector in which the reporting entity operates
- Sector-specific tools: Tools that are only applicable to reporting entities that operate in specific sectors
- Country-specific tools: Tools that are customized for emissions in certain developing countries (e.g., China, India)

Most tools use the same structure and contain guidance on how to use the tool. The guidance for each calculation tool often contains the following:

- An overview of the tool
- Information on choosing activity data and emissions factors
- A description of the various calculations methods that can be used based on the availability of activity data and emissions factors
- Guidance on inventory quality
- Guidance on documentation to support the calculations

How we see it

Given recent investor and regulatory focus on GHG inventories, reporting entities are increasingly using third-party services or purchased systems to track and calculate their GHG emissions inventory, instead of relying on spreadsheet-based calculation tools.

3.4 Disclosure of Scope 1 emissions

The Corporate Standard provides specific required and optional disclosures for Scope 1 emissions. The required disclosures have to be included in the report that includes the Scope 1 emissions metric for it to be presented in accordance with the GHG Protocol. Optional disclosures do not have to be included in the report that includes the Scope 1 emissions metric for it to be presented in accordance with the GHG Protocol. Appendix C of this publication includes a disclosure checklist with a comprehensive list of all required, recommended and optional disclosures established by the GHG Protocol.

[15] https://ghgprotocol.org/calculation-tools

3.4.1 Required disclosures

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 9

Information on emissions

- Total Scope 1 and 2 emissions independent of any GHG trades such as sales, purchases, transfers, or banking of allowances.
- Emissions data separately for each scope.
- Emissions data for all six GHGs separately (CO_2, CH_4, N_2O, HFCs, PFCs, SF_6) in metric tonnes and in tonnes of CO_2 equivalent
- Emissions data for direct CO_2 emissions from biologically sequestered carbon (e.g., CO_2 from burning biomass/biofuels), reported separately from the scopes.
- Methodologies used to calculate or measure emissions, providing a reference or link to any calculation tools used.

[EY note: The Corporate Standard initially included only six GHGs. However, the Corporate Standard was amended in 2013 to add NF_3 as a seventh GHG for disclosure under the GHG Protocol.]

A reporting entity is required to disclose the following information for Scope 1 emissions:

- Total Scope 1 emissions in units of CO_2e, presented gross (i.e., without the impact of any GHG sales, purchases, transfers or allowances) and separately from Scope 2 emissions
- Total Scope 1 emissions disaggregated by each of the seven GHGs separately in metric tons of each GHG and metric tons of CO_2e
- Direct CO_2 emissions from biologically sequestered carbon (disclosed separately from Scope 1 emissions)
- Methods used to calculate Scope 1 emissions, including a reference or link to any calculation tools used

When disclosing the method used to calculate Scope 1 emissions, we believe a reporting entity should reference the emissions factors used and include a description of the data sources (e.g., to the extent material, actual activity data or estimated activity data). Additionally, we believe a reporting entity should include a description of any significant assumptions used in its calculation of Scope 1 emissions. See section 6.1 below for the general required disclosures established by the GHG Protocol that are not related specifically to Scope 1 emissions.

The following example illustrates how Scope 1 emissions should be disclosed on an aggregated and disaggregated basis. This example is not a complete example of an emissions report and only presents a limited number of disclosures related to Scope 1 emissions. Scope 2 emissions and Scope 3 emissions, as well as certain general disclosure requirements, are excluded for purposes of this illustration.

Illustration 3-1: Disclosure of Scope 1 emissions

In 20X3 Company A calculated the following direct GHG emissions (i.e., Scope 1 emissions) within its reporting boundary:

- 115 metric tons of CO_2, of which 15 metric tons of CO_2 were emissions from burning biofuels (i.e., biologically sequestered carbon)

- 5 metric tons of N_2O
- 20 metric tons of CH_4

Company A prepared a report in accordance with the GHG Protocol. To convert the various greenhouse gases to CO_2e, it used the most recent 100-year GWP values published by the IPCC (at the time of this example, N_2O GWP of 273 and CH_4 GWP of 28).

Below is an excerpt of some disclosures related to Scope 1 emissions presented by Company A in its sustainability report:

Scope 1 GHG emissions by type:

	Metric tons	**Metric tons CO_2e**	***Calculation of CO_2e (not disclosed)***
CO_2	100	100	*100 mt x GWP of 1*
N_2O	5	1,365	*5 mt x GWP of 273*
CH_4	20	560	*20 mt x GWP of 28*
Total		2,025	

Fifteen metric tons of CO_2 were emitted from the burning of biofuels in the reporting period.

We estimated Scope 1 emissions using the Stationary Combustion and Transport or Mobile Combustion tools provided by the GHG Protocol. These emissions were primarily generated by our fleet of company vehicles and manufacturing equipment. Stationary combustion emissions factors were obtained from the IPCC 2006 Guidelines for National Greenhouse Gas Inventories, and mobile combustion emissions factors were obtained from the US EPA Climate Leaders (updated May 2008). The global warming potentials for each GHG are sourced from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change Sixth Assessment Report, 7.SM.6 *Tables of greenhouse gas lifetimes, radiative efficiencies and metrics*. Actual activity data based on fuel usage was used in both the stationary and mobile combustion calculations.

3.4.2 Optional disclosures

Although the optional disclosures are not required by the GHG Protocol, we believe they should be made if the reporting entity determines that excluding them would make the presentation of the GHG emissions misleading.

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 9

Information on emissions and performance

- Emissions data further subdivided, where this aids transparency, by business units/facilities, country, source types (stationary combustion, process, fugitive, etc.), and activity types (production of electricity, transportation, generation of purchased electricity that is sold to end users, etc.).
- Emissions attributable to own generation of electricity, heat, or steam that is sold or transferred to another organization (see chapter 4).
- Emissions from GHGs not covered by the Kyoto Protocol (e.g., CFCs, NOx,), reported separately from scopes.

A reporting entity has the option to disclose Scope 1 emissions data at a more disaggregated level than required above if the disaggregation increases the transparency of the information. This includes disaggregation of Scope 1 emissions data by business unit, facility, country, source type (see section 3.2 above), or activity type (e.g., transportation, generation of electricity). Other optional Scope 1 disclosures include the following:

- Scope 1 emissions from the generation of electricity, heat or steam that is sold or transferred to other entities
- Scope 1 emissions from GHGs that are not CO_2, CH_4, N_2O, HFCs, PFCs, SF_6 or NF_3 but have a GWP identified by the IPCC, separately from the emissions for the reported Scopes, along with a list of those GHGs included in the inventory

See section 6.2 below for other optional disclosures included in the GHG Protocol that are not specifically related to Scope 1 emissions.

3.5 Scope 1 reporting requirements from the California climate laws, ESRS and ISSB standards (updated June 2025)

The California Climate Corporate Data Accountability Act (SB-253) requires reporting entities that had more than $1 billion in annual revenue in the previous fiscal year and do business in California to annually disclose their Scope 1 emissions in accordance with the GHG Protocol. These disclosures should be made in metric tons of CO_2e, both in the aggregate for Scope 1 and for each of the seven GHGs for Scope 1. The California Greenhouse gases: climate-related financial risk law (SB-261) requires reporting entities with more than $500 million in annual revenue in the previous fiscal year that do business in California to biennially disclose climate-related information in accordance with the recommendations of the Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD), which include reporting Scope 1 emissions.

The ESRS require an entity to separately disclose aggregate Scope 1 emissions in metric tons of CO_2e, if material, with the impact of purchased or generated offsets excluded and separately disclosed. An entity is permitted to disaggregate those emissions, including by the seven GHGs or by country, but disaggregation is not required. The ESRS require additional disclosures, including the percentage of Scope 1 GHG emissions under regulated emissions trading schemes.

The ISSB standards require a reporting entity to disclose aggregate Scope 1 emissions in metric tons of CO_2e, but a reporting entity is generally not required to report emissions for each of the seven GHGs unless disaggregation of one or more of the constituent gases provides material information that would otherwise be obscured if aggregated. The impact of purchased or generated offsets would be excluded from these calculations and separately disclosed. Scope 1 emissions are only required to be disclosed if material. Disclosure of intensity metrics is not required.

4 Scope 2 emissions

4.1 Definition

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Glossary

Scope 2 emissions Indirect emissions from the generation of purchased or acquired electricity, steam, heat or cooling consumed by the reporting company.

Chapter 5

Scope 2 includes indirect emissions from generation only; other upstream emissions associated with the production and processing of upstream fuels, or transmission or distribution of energy within a grid, are tracked in Scope 3, category 3 (fuel- and energy-related emissions not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2).

Scope 2 emissions are considered indirect emissions because an entity outside of the reporting entity's organizational boundary (e.g., a power-generating facility owned by a third-party energy company) generates the emissions from the production of the electricity, steam, heat or cooling that is consumed by the reporting entity. That is, GHG emissions are a consequence of the activities of the reporting entity having consumed electricity, steam, heat or cooling produced by a third party. Only emissions from the generation of the energy are included in Scope 2. Upstream emissions associated with the production and processing of upstream fuels used in the generation of electricity, or losses in the transmission or distribution of energy within a grid, are included as Scope 3, category 3 emissions (fuel- and energy-related emissions not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2).

Purchased electricity is often the largest source of Scope 2 emissions for a reporting entity because it is regularly consumed as part of the reporting entity's operations (e.g., used to operate certain machinery and equipment, lights, heating and cooling systems). Steam is another widely used energy source for industrial processes and is primarily used for mechanical work and heating. Heat is used to heat water or specific equipment in a production process, and heat and cooling provided by third parties may be used in commercial or industrial buildings to control interior temperatures.

Only electricity, steam, heat and cooling purchased or acquired from a third party are included in a reporting entity's Scope 2 emissions. In contrast, emissions from the fuel used to produce electricity, steam, heat and cooling that is generated directly by the reporting entity (e.g., through an onsite power plant, boiler, furnace, air conditioning unit) is included in its Scope 1 emissions.

The term "electricity" is used throughout the GHG Protocol and in this publication to represent all acquired or purchased energy (i.e., electricity, steam, heat and cooling) from parties outside the reporting entity's organizational boundary.

The GHG Protocol includes two methods for calculating Scope 2 emissions: the location-based method (LBM) and the market-based method (MBM). The objective of these two methods is to allocate the emissions from electricity generation to the end consumer (i.e., an end user's Scope 2 emissions within a reporting period). The LBM reflects the average emissions of the geographical location where the electricity was purchased or acquired, while the MBM provides the opportunity to reflect emissions from the energy

procurement decisions and actions taken by the end consumer. See below sections 4.3.1 for guidance on when to use these methods, 4.4 for guidance on the LBM and 4.5 for guidance on the MBM.

4.2 Sources of electricity

Generated electricity is either distributed to end consumers through direct line transfer (i.e., directly from the electricity generator) or a local electricity grid. The GHG Protocol outlines different considerations for determining how emissions from generated electricity are accounted for and reported by entities involved in the generation, transfer and consumption.

A reporting entity needs to consider its organizational boundary when determining the appropriate reporting of emissions from electricity. A reporting entity would include any emissions from owned or controlled assets within its organizational boundary that generate electricity as Scope 1 emissions. Any emissions from electricity consumed by the reporting entity that is generated outside the organizational boundary are included as Scope 2 emissions. See section 2.5 above for guidance on determining whether an asset is within the reporting entity's organizational boundary.

4.2.1 Purchased or acquired electricity from direct line transfer

An energy producer may generate electricity and transfer it directly and exclusively to a single entity that consumes it as part of its operations. This is known as a direct line transfer. The Scope 2 Guidance provides the following examples of direct line transfers from third parties:

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 5

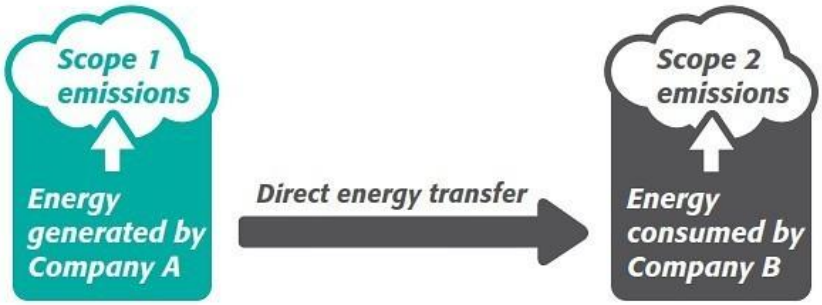
In this example, energy production is fed directly and exclusively to a single entity—here, Company B. This applies to several types of direct line transfers, including:

- An industrial park or collection of facilities, where one facility creates electricity, heat, steam, or cooling and transfers it directly to a facility owned or operated by a different party.
- For energy produced by equipment installed on-site (e.g. on-site solar array or a fuel cell using natural gas) that is owned and operated by a third party.
- For electricity, heat, steam, or cooling produced within a multi-tenant leased building (by a central boiler, or on-site solar) and sold to individual tenants who do not own or operate the building or the equipment. Tenants may pay for this energy as part of a lump rental cost and the tenant may not receive a separate bill.

In any of these scenarios:

- The company with operational or financial control of the energy generation facility would report these emissions in their Scope 1, following the operational control approach, while the consumer of the energy reports the emissions in Scope 2. …
- If all the energy generation is purchased and consumed, then Company B's Scope 2 emissions will be the same as Company A's Scope 1 emissions (minus any transmission and distribution losses, though in most cases of direct transfer there will be no losses).

Figure 5.2 Direct line energy transfer



Appendix A

Emissions from steam, heat, or cooling that is received via direct line as "waste" from an industrial process should still be reported based on the underlying emissions from the original generation process. Some companies may wish to account for these as zero emissions because the steam/heat/cooling would have been vented instantaneously if not used. However, accurate emissions accounting requires the actual emissions associated with the production of this waste to be reported.

A reporting entity needs to consider its organizational boundary when determining the appropriate reporting of emissions in direct line transfers. In the examples above, the reporting entity (Company B) would include the electricity it consumes as Scope 2 emissions under the equity share, financial control or operational control approaches (see section 2.5 above for more information about these approaches) because it does not own, otherwise financially control or operationally control the electricity generation equipment/facility.

4.2.2 Purchased or acquired electricity from an electric grid

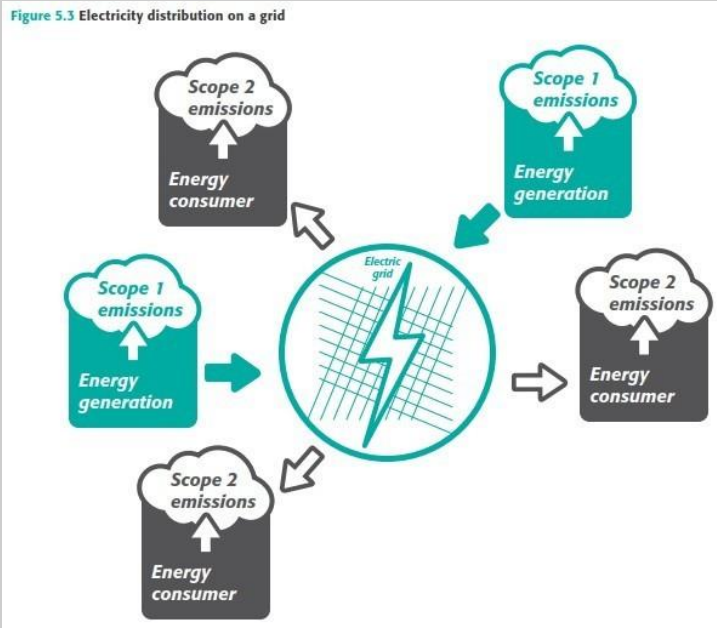
Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 5

Most consumers purchase or acquire some or all of their electricity through the electric grid, a shared electricity distribution network. Depending on the design of the grid, there may be a small number of central generation facilities providing energy to many consumers, or there may be a large number of generation facilities representing different technology types (thermal power using coal or natural gas inputs, or wind turbines, solar photovoltaic cells, or solar thermal, etc.). …

Because it is a shared network as opposed to a direct line, consumers may not be able to identify the specific power plant producing the energy they are using at any given time.[5] Use of specified generation on the grid can only be determined contractually. Energy on the grid moves to the nearest point it can be used, and multiple regions can exchange power depending on the capacity and needs of these regions. Steam, heat, and cooling can also be delivered through a grid, often called a district energy system. Such systems provide energy to multiple consumers, though they often have only one generation facility and serve a more limited geographic area than electricity grids.



[5] In rare situations, such as islands with a single, small grid, it may be possible to determine which power station was operating and providing power to the grid users.

A reporting entity often acquires some or all its electricity from an electric grid owned and operated by a third party. An electric grid is a shared electricity distribution network where electricity moves to the closest point it can be consumed. The design of an electric grid can vary, and the grid is often supplied by different sources of electricity generation (e.g., wind, solar, natural gas, coal, nuclear, hydro). Different sources of electricity generation emit different amounts of emissions. Because an electric grid is a shared distribution network, the end consumer is generally unable to identify the emissions associated with the specific electricity it acquires and consumes. Emissions factors for different electric grids are often used by a reporting entity to calculate its Scope 2 emissions. See section 4.3 below for further discussion of calculation methods for Scope 2 emissions.

4.2.3 Distributed electricity generation (electricity consumed from on-site production and the grid)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 5

Some companies own, operate, or host energy generation sources such as solar panels or fuel cells on the premises of their building or in close proximity to where the energy is consumed. This arrangement is often termed "distributed generation" or "on-site" consumption, as it consists of generation units across decentralized locations (often on the site where the energy output will be consumed, as opposed to utility-scale centralized power plants). The company may consume some or all of the energy output from these generation facilities; sell excess energy output back to the grid; and purchase additional grid power to cover any remaining energy demand.

The owners/operator of a distributed generation facility may therefore have both Scope 1 emissions from energy generation, as well as Scope 2 emissions from any energy purchased from the grid, or consumed from on-site generation where attributes (e.g., certificates) are sold.

Activity data. Determining the underlying activity data (in MWh or kWh) in these systems may be challenging given the flux of electricity coming in or flowing out. Many markets utilize "net metering" for these systems, which allows grid purchases to be measured only as net of any energy exported to the grid. This net number may also be the basis for how costs are assessed.

For accurate Scope 2 GHG accounting, companies shall use the total—or gross—electricity purchases from the grid rather than grid purchases "net" of generation for the Scope 2 calculation. A company's total energy consumption would therefore include self-generated energy (any emissions reflected in Scope 1) and total electricity purchased from the grid (electricity). It would exclude generation sold back to the grid.

If a company cannot distinguish between its gross and net grid purchases, it should state and justify this in the inventory.

In addition to using electricity from the grid, a reporting entity may generate electricity on-site from equipment within its reporting boundary, such as solar panels, propane combustion in a generator or wind turbines. This electricity is often consumed on-site by the reporting entity with any excess electricity sold to the grid. However, it is difficult to accurately measure the quantity of electricity sold to the grid in these scenarios due to the fluctuation in the level of electricity coming out of or going into the grid.

In these scenarios, the GHG Protocol requires a reporting entity to include the gross amount of electricity purchased from the grid as the basis for Scope 2 emissions (i.e., any electricity generated on-site and sold back to the grid is not subtracted from the amount purchased from the grid, so it is excluded from the Scope 2 activity data). The emissions from self-generated electricity consumed by the reporting entity and from self-generated electricity sold to the grid are reported as Scope 1 emissions because they are directly generated emissions. The emissions from electricity purchased from the grid are reported as Scope 2 emissions because the reporting entity is indirectly responsible for them.

In some cases, the gross amount of electricity purchased from the grid may not be distinguishable because the utility provider only reports the net electricity purchased from the grid. When a reporting entity cannot distinguish between its gross and net grid purchases, it is required to disclose that fact and justify why gross reporting of electricity consumed from the grid is not possible.

Illustration 4-1: Distributed electricity

Company A has corporate offices with solar panels, which are owned by Company A, installed on the roof. Company A uses the electricity generated by these solar panels in addition to drawing electricity from the grid. Additionally, at times Company A sells electricity generated by the solar panels to the grid.

In 20X3, Company A's electricity generation and usage and related emissions (only including CO_2 for simplicity) are as follows:

	kWh	CO_2 emissions factor (lbs/kWh)	Metric ton/lbs	CO_2 output (metric ton)
Electricity generated by solar and used on-site (Scope 1)	60,000	0.0	1/2,204.6	0.0
Electricity generated by solar and sold to grid (Scope 1)	10,000	0.0	1/2,204.6	0.0
Electricity purchased from grid (Scope 2)	250,000	1.23	1/2,204.6	139.5
Total				139.5

On a net basis, Company A purchased 240,000 more kWh from the grid than it sold to the grid. However, the GHG Protocol requires Company A to report on the gross electricity consumed. Therefore, the CO_2 emissions generated by Company A related to the electricity generated and consumed (both from on-site production and from the grid) for its corporate office are as follows:

Scope 1	0.0
Scope 2	139.5
Total	139.5

4.2.4 On-site renewable electricity when EACs are sold

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 6

The creation of a certificate that conveys an energy generation attribute claim means that the underlying power—sometimes called "null power"—can no longer be considered to contain the energy attributes, including the type of energy (e.g., that it is "renewable") and its GHG emission rate (that it is zero emissions/MWh). By the conveyance of energy attributes or certificates to a third party separate from the electricity, users of the null power electricity cannot claim to be buying or using renewable energy in the absence of owning the certificate. Instead, companies consuming energy from owned/operated facilities or direct-line transfers where certificates are sold off, shall calculate that consumption using other market-based method emission factors such as "replacement" certificates, a supplier-specific emission rate, or residual mix (for the market-based method total) and the grid average emission factor (for the location-based total).

6.4.1 How certificate sales affect on-site energy consumption in the location-based method

Companies who are consuming energy directly from a generation facility that has sold certificates (either owned/operated equipment or a direct line) forfeit not only the right to claim those emissions in the market-based method (requiring the use of some other market-based data source such as other "replacement" certificates, a supplier-specific emission factor, or residual mix) but also the right to claim that emissions profile in the location-based method. Overall, the location-based method is designed to show emissions from the production supporting the local consumption without reference to any contractual relationships. However, the attributes contained in certificates usually carry legally enforceable claims, which should take precedence.

A reporting entity may have on-site renewable energy at facilities (e.g., solar panels, a wind turbine) within its reporting boundary. Close physical proximity or even connection of the renewable energy installation to the reporting entity's operations does not necessarily entitle the reporting entity to the right to claim the related emissions attributes of the renewable energy installation.

As discussed in section 2.8.2.3 below, under quality criteria 7, the ability of the reporting entity to claim the emissions attributes depends on whether the entity that owns or controls (depending on the consolidation approach selected) the facility that receives and retains EACs for the renewable energy generated, transfers them to the reporting entity or transfers them to a third party. For example, if EACs are generated for on-site renewable energy and the reporting entity transfers those EACs to a third party, the reporting entity cannot claim the emissions attributes of the renewable energy because it does not hold the EACs through their retirement.

Emissions from owned/controlled facilities are generally included as Scope 1 emissions. However, reporting emissions from energy generated from owned/controlled facilities as Scope 2 emissions (under both the LBM and MBM) when the EACs are transferred to a third party is required because the contractual instrument does not change the fact that energy is physically consumed; the contractual instrument only affects the emissions reported for that energy. See sections 4.4.2 and 4.5.2 below for more details of how reporting entities treat energy related to contractual instruments sold using the LBM and MBM, respectively.

Illustration 4-2: Distributed electricity

Company A has corporate offices with solar panels, which are owned by Company A, installed on the roof. Company A uses the electricity generated by these solar panels, in addition to drawing electricity from the grid. Additionally, at times Company A sells electricity generated by the solar panels to the grid. Company A sells the EACs for the electricity generated by the solar panels to Company B.

Since Company A sells the EACs related to the solar panels, it has sold the right to claim the renewable energy attributes of the solar electricity and cannot claim those attributes, including the 0 mtCO2e/kWh emissions factor. Instead, it must use the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available for that electricity under either the LBM or MBM (see section 4.4.1 and 4.5.1 below, respectively) for the amount of power generated by the solar panels.

In 20X3, Company A's electricity generation and usage and related emissions, using the grid average emissions factor for the electricity from the solar panels (only including CO_2 for simplicity), are as follows:

	kWh	CO_2 emissions factor (lbs/kWh)	Metric ton/lbs	CO_2 output (metric ton)
Electricity generated by solar and used on-site (Scope 2)	60,000	1.23	1/2,204.6	33.5
Electricity generated by solar and sold to grid (Scope 1)	10,000	0.0	1/2,204.6	0.0
Electricity purchased from grid (Scope 2)	250,000	1.23	1/2,204.6	139.5
Total				173.0

The emissions related to the electricity generated by solar and used onsite is reported as Scope 2 emissions, even though it was generated by the reporting entity, because the related emissions attributes were sold. Therefore, the energy consumed is assumed to have come from the grid, as Company A can no longer benefit from the EACs that were sold. The electricity generated by solar and sold to the grid has an emissions factor of zero because it did not generate any emissions and is reported as Scope 1 emissions.

Scope 1	0.0
Scope 2	173.0
Total	173.0

4.2.5 Considerations for transmission and distribution of electricity

There are special considerations for determining Scope 2 emissions for electric utility reporting entities that transmit and/or distribute electricity generated by third parties, such as electricity transmission and distribution companies. For example, an electric utility company's operations may include reselling electricity initially acquired from third-party electric power generators to the local grid or reselling electricity acquired from the grid to end consumers through an owned and operated transmission and distribution (T&D) system. A T&D system generally includes power lines, transformers and electrical substations used to deliver energy to customers.

A portion of electricity is lost during the T&D process due to the inefficiency of power lines as they transmit electricity. These losses are called T&D losses (or referred to as "line losses"). Consistent with the Scope 2 definition, an electric utility company transmitting and distributing electricity acquired or generated from third parties accounts for the emissions from the energy lost during the T&D process (i.e., the T&D losses) as Scope 2 emissions if the T&D system is within the reporting entity's inventory boundary.

An integrated electric utility company that generates its own electricity and transports and distributes that electricity in the same grid or uses a direct transfer arrangement already includes the emissions from all electricity it generated (i.e., both the electricity consumed by the end consumer and the electricity lost during the T&D process) as Scope 1 emissions. Therefore, no additional emissions for T&D losses are reported.

The end consumer only includes the emissions from the electricity it consumes (i.e., the energy it purchases or acquires) as Scope 2 emissions. It does not report the emissions from T&D losses as Scope 2 emissions because it generally does not own or control the T&D system. Instead, the end consumer reports emissions from T&D losses as Category 3, *Fuel- and energy-related activities*, Scope 3 emissions.

How we see it

An integrated utility company that transmits and distributes electricity generated within its reporting boundary, as well as transmits and distributes electricity acquired from third parties, may not know the amount of T&D losses attributable to electricity generated within its reporting boundary (i.e., emissions already included in its Scope 1 emissions) compared with the amount of T&D losses attributable to the acquired electricity (i.e., emissions that should be included in Scope 2 emissions). If this information is not available, the reporting entity may need to allocate the T&D losses between the electricity generated and the electricity acquired for purposes of reporting Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions. If the impact of this estimate is material to the reported amounts, the estimation method should be disclosed.

4.3 Calculating Scope 2 emissions

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 6

Once the inventory boundary has been established, companies generally calculate GHG emissions using the following steps:

- Identify GHG emission sources for Scope 2 emissions
- Determine whether the market-based approach applies
- Collect activity data and choose emission factors for each method
- Calculate emissions
- Roll up GHG emissions data to corporate level.

A reporting entity needs to consider its organizational boundary (i.e., equity share approach, financial control approach and operational control approach) and operational boundary before identifying emissions sources and categorizing them as Scope 1, Scope 2 or Scope 3 emissions. Refer to above sections 2.5 for information on organizational boundaries and 2.6 for information on operational boundaries.

After identifying its organizational and operational boundaries, a reporting entity generally uses the following steps to calculate its Scope 2 emissions:

- Identify emissions sources (e.g., operations, assets, processes) within its boundaries that consume purchased or acquired electricity
- Determine whether MBM instruments are available and, therefore, that the MBM method applies (e.g., whether there are contractual instruments related to purchased electricity)
- Collect activity data and identify and apply appropriate emissions factors for both the location-based method and the market-based method
- Calculate emissions
- Compile the Scope 2 emissions data at the reporting entity level

4.3.1 Applicability of the market-based method

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 6

The presence of contractual information in any market where a company has operations triggers the requirement to report according to the market-based method. …

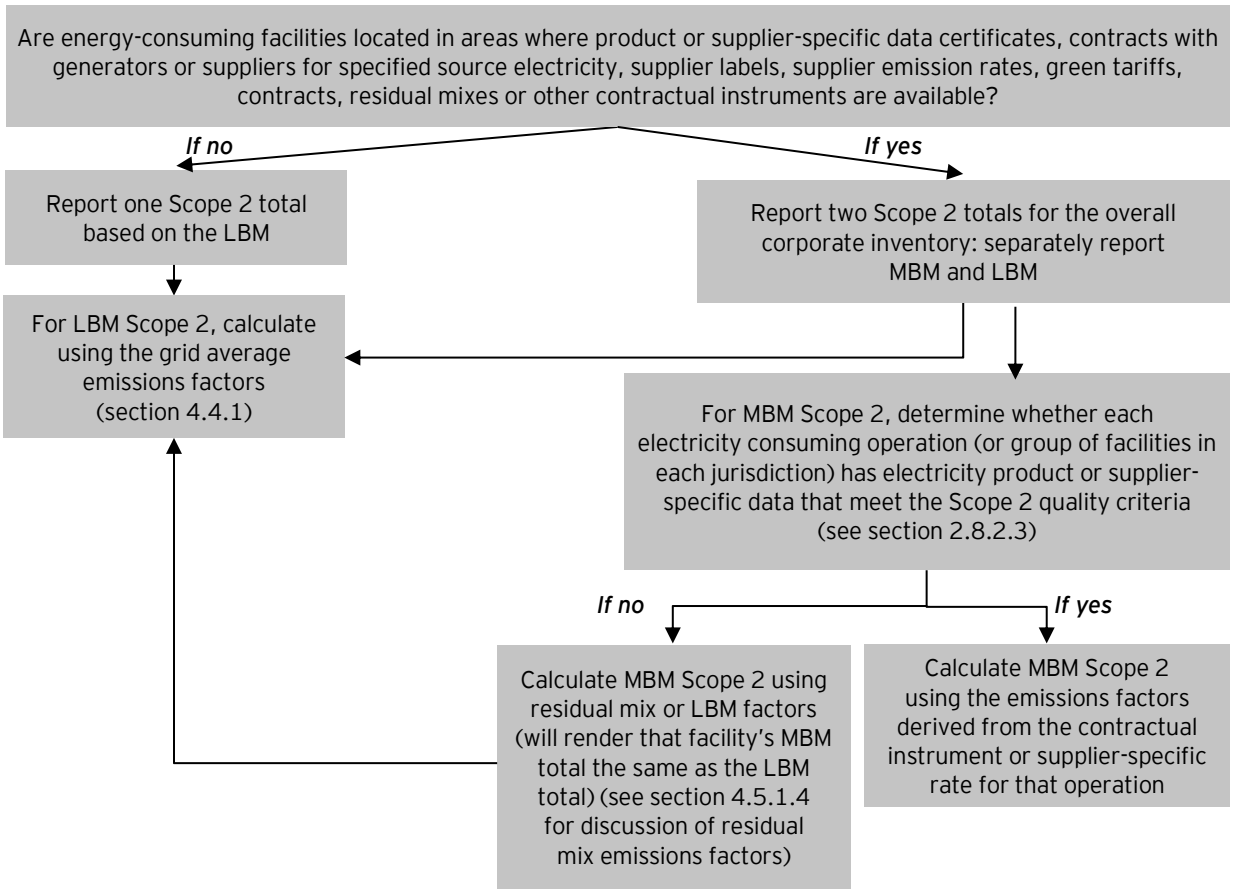
If no facilities in the entire organizational boundary of the reporting entity are located in markets with contractual claims systems, or where no instruments within those systems meet Scope 2 Quality Criteria required by this document, then only the location-based method shall be used to calculate Scope 2.

Chapter 7

The two method totals (location-based and market-based) should not be viewed as "gross/net," since a net calculation typically implies that external reductions such as offsets have been applied to the inventory.

The GHG Protocol requires all reporting entities with electricity consumption to report under both the LBM and MBM (i.e., dual reporting) if any market where an entity has operations has differentiated energy products in the form of contractual instruments (e.g., renewable energy certificates, energy attribute certificates, supplier-specific contracts) that meet the Scope 2 quality criteria discussed in section 2.8.2.3 above. See section 2.8 of this publication for additional information about contractual instruments.

A reporting entity should use only the LBM if it does not have any facilities or operations in its entire organizational boundary that operate in markets with differentiated energy products in the form of contractual instruments that meet the Scope 2 quality criteria. The following flowchart, which is based on Figure 6.1 from the Scope 2 Guidance, shows the decision process a reporting entity should follow to determine whether the use of both the LBM and MBM is required. The sections referenced in the following flowchart are located in this publication.



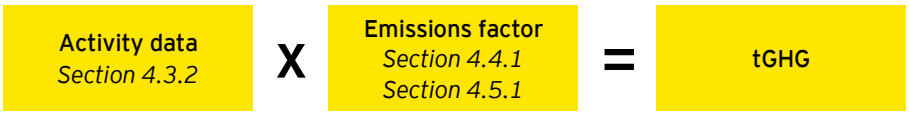
How we see it

Examples of markets that currently have differentiated energy products in the form of contractual instruments include the US, EU Member States, European Economic Area, Australia, most Latin American countries, Japan and India. We believe that many reporting entities will be required to report emissions using both methods.

As highlighted in the flowchart above, when a reporting entity has operations in multiple markets and only a portion of the markets have differentiated energy products, the reporting entity is still required to report its entire Scope 2 emissions using the MBM and LBM. In those cases, the reporting entity is required to use the LBM amount in its MBM calculation for the portion of the markets that does not have differentiated energy products.

Each unit of electricity should correspond to an emissions factor that is appropriate based on the location or market where that electricity is consumed. For example, a reporting entity applying the MBM that purchases certificates for 60% of its electricity consumption has to identify and apply emissions factors for the remaining 40% of the electricity using the hierarchy described in section 4.5.1 below. That is, it is not appropriate to use the purchased emissions factor included in the certificate for more than 60% of the electricity used.

Similar to Scope 1 emissions, the general calculation formula for Scope 2 emissions (using both the MBM and LBM) is:



The use of the LBM or MBM determines which emissions factor is used. See below sections 4.4 for more information on selecting emissions factors using the LBM and 4.5 for more information on selecting emissions factors using the MBM.

4.3.2 Activity data

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 6

For Scope 2 calculation, activity data includes all energy purchased/acquired and consumed from an entity outside of the organization or from owned/operated generation facilities where energy attributes (e.g. certificates) have been sold or transferred.

To determine activity data, metered electricity consumption or utility bills specifying consumption in MWh or kWh units can provide the most precise activity data. In some cases these may not be available, as with consumption occurring in a shared space without energy metering. In these cases, estimations may be used such as allocating an entire building's electricity usage to all tenants on the basis of the reporter's square footage and the building's occupancy rate (called the Area method).

The activity data used to calculate Scope 2 emissions is often provided to the reporting entity by the utility provider or through metered energy consumption at facilities within the reporting entity's reporting boundary. This data is often in the form of a measure of watt hours of electricity used (e.g., megawatt hours (MWh), kilowatt hours (KWh)) but can take other forms depending on the type of energy (electricity, steam, heat or cooling) purchased from a third party. Precise activity data may not always be available. In such cases, a reporting entity needs to estimate its activity data.

4.3.2.1 Scope 2 emissions from leased assets (updated September 2024)

When calculating Scope 2 emissions from leased assets, such as a leased building with multiple tenants, a reporting entity may not always have access to precise activity data obtained directly from a utility provider. In these cases, activity data may be obtained from the landlord directly. The forms of activity data that the landlord is able to provide may vary in precision. For example, the building may be sub-metered, in which case the landlord would be able to provide the reporting entity with specific consumption data. In other cases, the landlord may be able to provide each tenant with total energy consumption for the building along with various allocation factors (e.g., leased square footage, operating hours), which the reporting entity can use to calculate emissions.

See section 2.5.5.1 above for a discussion of emissions related to electricity, steam, heat or cooling used by or at leased assets. The section notes that the emissions reporting depends on the chosen organizational boundary as well as other factors.

4.4 Location-based method

The LBM reflects the average emissions factors of the electricity grids on which a reporting entity consumes electricity. The LBM is required to be used by all reporting entities. A reporting entity's electricity procurement decisions (e.g., a decision to purchase electricity generated from renewable sources) are not factored into the LBM calculation of Scope 2 emissions. Therefore, this method can be applied in all locations and provides information on emissions from the overall mix of generation sources used in the grid. The LBM results in Scope 2 emissions from a reporting entity's activities in the respective region that are consistent with the Scope 2 emissions from other entities' activities in the same region. This provides better comparability among entities based on the location of their activities.

Under the LBM, a reporting entity uses an emissions factor that represents the average emissions from energy generation within a defined geographical area (e.g., local, subnational or national level) during a defined time period, which is often 12 months (i.e., the grid average emissions factor). Supplier-specific emissions factors should not be used under this method. Additionally, these emissions factors do not reflect the impact of contractual instruments.

The example below, which is based on Table 6.6 in the Scope 2 Guidance, illustrates how a grid average emissions factor is calculated.

Illustration 4-3: Grid average emissions factor calculation

Three energy generation facilities operate in a subnational geographical area. The grid average emissions factor for this subnational geographical area is calculated as follows:

Energy facility type	Emissions from generation	Total generation in MWh
Coal facility A	50,000 metric tons CO_2e	55,000
Natural gas facility B	10,000 metric tons CO_2e	30,000
Wind farm facility C	0 metric tons CO_2e	15,000
Total within boundary	**60,000 metric tons CO_2e**	**100,000**
Total grid average	**60,000 metric tons CO_2e / 100,000 MWh**	**0.6 metric tons CO_2e /MWh**

The grid average emissions factor is 0.6 metric tons CO_2e /MWh.

4.4.1 LBM emissions factor hierarchy

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 5

Companies should use the most appropriate, accurate, precise, and highest quality emission factors available for each method.

The average emissions factor for electricity under the LBM should characterize all the GHG emissions associated with the electricity generation from facilities located within a specific geographical boundary.

The GHG Protocol includes a hierarchy for determining the most appropriate emissions factors to use under the LBM. The following chart, based on Table 6.2 in the Scope 2 Guidance, presents this hierarchy:

Emissions factors	Example	Level of precision
Regional or subnational grid average emissions factors	Emissions & Generation Resource Integrated Database (eGRID) total output emission rates	Higher ↕ Lower
National grid average emissions factors	International Energy Agency (IEA) national electricity emissions factors	

The regional or subnational emissions factors represent all energy production occurring in a defined distribution region that equals or approximates a geographically precise energy distribution and use area. A region that is based on an actual distribution and use area should reflect net physical energy imports and exports.

eGRID[16] is a comprehensive source of data published by the EPA, including the emissions characteristics of almost all electric power generated in the US. eGRID splits the US into approximately 30 subareas for purposes of reporting. This data is more precise (and, therefore, higher in the LBM emissions factor hierarchy) because it reports emissions specific to where the energy is distributed and used (i.e., a regional or subnational basis). Other countries (e.g., Canada and Australia) also publish regional emissions factors. The IEA[17] provides emissions factors for countries worldwide in annual reports published on their website. A less precise measure (and, therefore, lower in the LBM emissions factor hierarchy) would be emissions factors defined based on national borders (or other federal/state borders) rather than actual energy distribution and use areas.

In addition to determining which emissions factor best aligns with the energy distribution and use area, a reporting entity has to also consider other data quality factors, such as reliability, completeness, temporal representativeness (i.e., what year of data the emissions factor is based on compared to the reporting year) and technological representativeness in determining which emissions factor is most appropriate.

Grid average emissions factors are different from marginal grid emissions factors, which represent the emissions factor for the next incremental unit of power produced (i.e., the emissions factor of the cleanest power generation facility in the boundary that still has available capacity). The GHG Protocol prohibits the use of marginal emissions factors in the LBM.

How we see it

Temporal representativeness becomes a more significant indicator of emissions factor data quality during periods of significant improvement in GHG emissions from the grid due to changing infrastructure (e.g., a significant increase in renewable power generation facilities). Judgment is required to determine which emissions factor is most appropriate based on the facts and circumstances.

4.4.2 LBM emissions calculation

Under the LBM, each unit of electricity consumption should be multiplied by the emissions factor most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality available (as described in section 4.4.1 above) for the reporting entity's location. The following table, which is based on Table 6.1 from the Scope 2 Guidance, illustrates how Scope 2 emissions should be calculated for each source of electricity described in section 4.2 above. The sections referenced in the following table are located in this publication.

[16] https://www.epa.gov/egrid

[17] https://www.iea.org/

	GHG reporting under the LBM
Energy consumed from owned/operated generation (e.g., a reporting entity owns a solar panel and consumes the energy)	
No certificates are generated or sold	No Scope 2 emissions are reported for consumption of energy from owned/controlled generation when no EACs are sold because the related emissions are reported in Scope 1.
Certificates from generation facility are retired/retained by the generation facility's owner who consumes the energy	No Scope 2 emissions are reported for consumption of energy from owned/controlled generation because the related EACs were retired by the reporting entity. A reporting entity should report the EAC retention separately.
Certificates are sold to a third party	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available under the location-based emissions factor hierarchy (see section 4.4.1).
Energy consumed from a direct line (e.g., a reporting entity receives power directly from a generator, with no grid transfers)	
No certificates are generated or sold	Scope 2 emissions are reported using a specific emissions factor from the direct line source.
Certificates from generation facility are retired/retained by the energy consumer	Scope 2 emissions are reported using a specific emissions factor from the direct line source (i.e., the same emissions factor as the certificate).
Certificates are sold to a third party	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available under the location-based emissions factor hierarchy (see section 4.4.1).
Energy consumed from the grid	
No certificates are generated or sold from any generation facilities on the grid	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available under the location-based emissions factor hierarchy (see section 4.4.1).
Certificates are purchased from grid generation facilities or are included in a supplier-specific emissions factor	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available under the location-based emissions factor hierarchy (see section 4.4.1). That is, a supplier-specific emissions factor should not be used.
Certificates from grid generation facilities are sold to third parties	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available under the location-based emissions factor hierarchy (see section 4.4.1).

4.4.3 LBM treatment of emissions from biomass

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 6

Biogenic materials—including biomass, biofuels, and biogas—are increasingly used as a resource for energy generation on-site and on the grid. While biomass can produce fewer GHG emissions than fossil fuels and may be grown and used on a shorter time horizon, it still produces GHG emissions and should not be treated with a "zero" emission factor. Based on the Corporate Standard, any CH_4 or N_2O emissions from biogenic energy sources use shall be reported in Scope 2, while the CO_2 portion of the biofuel combustion shall be reported outside the scopes. In practice, this means that any market-based method data that includes biofuels should report the CO_2 portion of the biofuel combustion separately from the scopes.

Biogenic materials (e.g., biomass, biofuel and biogas) can be used to generate energy either on-site or

for the grid. While these materials typically emit less GHGs than other fuels, they still emit GHGs. The GHG protocol specifies that CH_4 or N_2O emissions from biogenic energy generation need to be included in Scope 2 emissions. However, CO_2 emissions from biogenic energy generation, if presented, are required to be presented separately from Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions (see Illustration 3-1 in section 3.4.1 above for an example). Many of the common grid average emissions factors used in the LBM do not include the portion of the emissions factor related to biogenic energy generation and do not separately report CO_2 emissions from biogenic energy generation. The GHG Protocol recommends disclosing this omission if this data is not separately available.

4.5 Market-based method

The MBM represents the emissions associated with the choices a reporting entity makes when acquiring electricity. Scope 2 emissions under the MBM are derived from a reporting entity's contractual relationships or instruments. For example, if a reporting entity chooses a specific energy generation supplier or enters into a supply agreement for electricity from a regional wind farm, it would use the emissions factors resulting from these contracts in its Scope 2 emissions calculation under the MBM. Unlike the LBM, the MBM provides information about the decisions a reporting entity has made to reduce emissions from its consumption of electricity.

Contractual instruments include direct contracts with a supplier (e.g., PPAs, VPPAs) and bundled or unbundled attribute claims (e.g., renewable energy certificates, energy attribute certificates, guarantees of origin, supplier-specific emission rates, residual mix factors). See section 2.8 of this publication for further discussion of contractual instruments. Contractual instruments have to meet the quality criteria in the Scope 2 Guidance to be included in the calculation of Scope 2 emissions under the MBM. See section 2.8.2.3 above for further discussion of the Scope 2 quality criteria.

4.5.1 MBM emissions factor hierarchy

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 5

Companies should use the most appropriate, accurate, precise, and highest quality emission factors available for each method.

A reporting entity may have access to multiple MBM emissions factors for each of its energy-consuming operations. In this case, it should use the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available. Determining which emissions factor to use requires judgment based on facts and circumstances.

The GHG Protocol includes a hierarchy for determining which emissions factor is the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor. This hierarchy indicates that a reporting entity should first use an emissions factor derived from contractual instruments that meet the Scope 2 quality criteria (and indicates the hierarchy of contractual instruments as well).

When a reporting entity does not have contractual instruments for a given market or the contractual instruments do not meet the quality criteria in the Scope 2 Guidance, subnational or national residual mix factors are then used, if available. Residual mix factors represent the emissions that remain from the generation of electricity across the grid after the impact of claimed contractual instruments has been removed. When residual mix factors are not available, other grid average emissions factors are used instead, such as those used under the LBM.

The following chart, based on Table 6.3 in the Scope 2 Guidance, presents this hierarchy:

Emissions factors	Example	Level of precision
EACs	Renewable energy credits	Higher  Lower
Factors from contracts for electricity where EACs do not exist or are not required for a usage claim	PPAs or VPPAs	
Supplier/utility specific emission rates	Emission rate allocated and disclosed to retail electricity users, representing the entire delivered energy product (i.e., not only the supplier's owned assets)	
Residual mix (subnational or national) factors	Calculated by EU country under RE-DISS project	
Other grid average emissions factors	eGRID or IEA total output emission rates	

See the following sections for specific considerations for each type of MBM emissions factor.

4.5.1.1 Energy attribute certificates

EACs are tradeable certificates that are separable from the actual energy produced and evidence the type of energy produced and the related environmental attributes associated with the energy produced (e.g., the GHG emissions produced by the energy generation source). EACs that meet the Scope 2 quality criteria established by the GHG Protocol are generally the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factors to use in the MBM. See section 2.8.2 above for more details about EACs and the related quality criteria.

4.5.1.2 Factors from contracts for electricity

PPAs and VPPAs are two popular ways for a reporting entity to form agreements with a specific energy generator and gain access to emissions factors reported under the MBM. Additionally, these contracts often provide the energy supplier with a long-term revenue stream that allows them to access financing to build the renewable energy source. PPAs and VPPAs can be structured either to generate EACs or not. When an EAC is generated, it serves as the emissions factor for the arrangement, since this is the most accurate emissions factor available based on the MBM emissions factory hierarchy, assuming it meets the Scope 2 quality criteria (see section 2.8.2.3). When EACs are sold to third parties (other than the power purchaser), the power purchaser cannot claim the renewable attributes of the energy generation facility.

When EACs are not generated, a PPA or VPPA can still convey the emissions factor, as long as the arrangement includes appropriate language to convey the emissions attributes to the power purchaser, and the contract meets the electricity-specific quality criterion described in section 2.8.2.3 above. That criterion requires an audit trail or other mechanism to prove that no other entity can claim the emissions factor for the energy.

4.5.1.3 Supplier/utility emission rates

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 6

When using a supplier-specific emission factor, companies should seek to ensure that:

- The emission rate is disclosed, preferably publicly, according to best available information, …

- That the utility or supplier discloses whether and how certificates are used in the emission factor calculation, unless there is third-party certification of the utility product. In particular, companies should seek to ensure that if the supplier has a differentiated product (e.g. a renewable energy product or tariff), the certificates or other contracts used for that product should be used only for that product and not counted in the standard product offer.
- That the supplier-specific emission factor includes emissions from all the energy delivered by the utility, not just the generation assets owned by the supplier (e.g. what is required by some fuel mix disclosure rules). Many suppliers purchase significant portions of their energy from other generators via contracts, or through the spot market. The emission factor should reflect the emissions from all of these purchases. A supplier-specific emission rate can also reflect certificates retired for compliance purposes (such as U.S. state RPS programs) which also convey attributes for public benefit and claims.

In some energy markets, a single supplier may provide all the energy for a given area. In other energy markets, there may be competition from a number of suppliers that interface directly with customers. Regardless of the market, an energy supplier or utility may provide emissions factors for the energy delivered to its customers. These supplier-/utility- specific emissions factors may be used in the MBM if the Scope 2 quality criteria are met (see section 2.8.2.3 above). A reporting entity should not separately calculate or estimate a supplier-/utility- specific emissions factor for Scope 2 emissions.

If a supplier purchases offsets on behalf of its customers, the customer reports these offsets separately from the Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 amounts to accurately reflect the emissions generated by the creation of the energy. See section 2.8.3 above for additional guidance on offsets, including the verification of those offsets.

4.5.1.4 Residual mix factors

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 6

To prevent double counting of GHG emission rate claims tracked through contractual instruments, the market-based method requires an emission factor that characterizes the emission rate of untracked or unclaimed energy. This emission factor creates a complete data set under the market-based method, and represents the regional emissions data that consumers should use if they operate in a market with choice for consumers, differentiated products, and supplier specific data, but did not purchase certificates or a specified product, do not have a contract with a specified source, or do not have supplier-specific information.

A residual mix emissions factor is similar to a grid average emissions factor used in the LBM, but it excludes the impact of claimed contractual instruments within the grid (i.e., the benefit of the contractual instruments is removed because they are claimed by other parties). Since contractual instruments are often based on renewable energy, the residual mix emissions factor is usually higher than the grid average emissions factor. Residual mix emissions factors do not exist in all markets.

The Scope 2 Guidance explicitly mentions the EU RE-DISS project as a source of residual mix emissions factors for countries in the EU. Any other residual mix emissions factors should be assessed for appropriateness, since many of these factors only remove the renewable energy certified or sold by the publishing organization (and exclude other potential EACs). See section 2.8.2.3 above for discussion of the quality criteria for residual mix emissions factors.

If a residual mix emissions factor does not exist, a reporting entity has to disclose that fact. A reporting entity should not separately calculate or estimate a residual mix emissions factor.

4.5.1.5 Other grid average emissions factors

If a residual mix emissions factor is not available, a reporting entity may use an unadjusted grid average emissions factor, such as that used in the LBM.

4.5.2 MBM emissions calculation

Under the MBM, each unit of electricity consumption should be multiplied by the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available (as described in section 4.5.1 above) for the reporting entity's market. The following table, which is based on Table 6.1 from the Scope 2 Guidance, illustrates how Scope 2 emissions should be calculated for each source of electricity described in section 4.2 of this guidance. The sections referenced in the following table are located in this publication.

	GHG reporting under the MBM
Energy consumed from owned/operated generation (e.g., a reporting entity owns a solar panel and consumes the energy)	
No certificates are generated or sold	No Scope 2 emissions are reported for consumption of energy from owned/controlled generation when no EACs are sold because the related emissions are reported in Scope 1.
Certificates from generation facility are retired/retained by the generation facility's owner who consumes the energy	No Scope 2 emissions are reported for consumption of energy from owned/controlled generation because the related EACs were retired by the reporting entity. A reporting entity should report the EAC retention separately.
Certificates are sold to a third party	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available under the market -based emissions factor hierarchy (see section 4.5.1).
Energy consumed from a direct line (e.g., a reporting entity receives power directly from a generator, with no grid transfers)	
No certificates are generated or sold	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the specific emissions factor from the direct line source.
Certificates from generation facility are retired/retained by the energy consumer	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the certificate emissions factor (i.e., the same emissions factor as the source-specific emissions factor).
Certificates are sold to a third party	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available under the market-based emissions factor hierarchy (see section 4.5.1).
Energy consumed from the grid	
No certificates are generated or sold from any generation facilities on the grid	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available under the market-based emissions factor hierarchy (see section 4.5.1).
Certificates are purchased from grid generation facilities or are included in a supplier-specific emissions factor	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available under the market-based emissions factor hierarchy (see section 4.5.1).
Certificates from grid generation facilities are sold to third parties	Scope 2 emissions are reported using the most appropriate, accurate, precise and highest quality emissions factor available under the market-based emissions factor hierarchy (see section 4.5.1).

How we see it

As illustrated by the table above and the LBM calculation table in section 4.4.2 above, if a reporting entity does not have contractual instruments or other MBM-specific emissions factors (such as a residual mix emissions factor), it would need to use the same emissions factors that are used for the Scope 2 LBM emissions calculation, specifically a grid average emissions factor. This scenario could result in calculating and reporting the same value for both Scope 2 LBM and MBM emissions. This presentation would still be in accordance with the Scope 2 Guidance.

4.5.3 MBM treatment of emissions from biomass

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 6

Biogenic materials—including biomass, biofuels, and biogas—are increasingly used as a resource for energy generation on-site and on the grid. While biomass can produce fewer GHG emissions than fossil fuels and may be grown and used on a shorter time horizon, it still produces GHG emissions and should not be treated with a "zero" emission factor. Based on the Corporate Standard, any CH_4 or N_2O emissions from biogenic energy sources use shall be reported in Scope 2, while the CO_2 portion of the biofuel combustion shall be reported outside the scopes. In practice, this means that any market-based method data that includes biofuels should report the CO_2 portion of the biofuel combustion separately from the scopes.

Biogenic materials (e.g., biomass, biofuel and biogas) can be used to generate energy either on-site or for the grid. While these materials typically emit less GHGs than other fuels, they still emit GHGs. The GHG Protocol specifies that CH_4 or N_2O emissions from biogenic energy generation need to be included in Scope 2 emissions. However, CO_2 emissions from biogenic energy generation, if presented, are required to be presented separately from Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions. Therefore, any market-based method emissions factors that include biogenic emissions will need to provide the CO_2 emissions separately from the other GHGs, if presented. If this data is not separately available, we believe a reporting entity should disclose this omission.

4.6 Scope 2 disclosures

The Corporate Standard provides required and optional disclosures for Scope 2 emissions. Additionally, the Scope 2 Guidance, which amended the Corporate Standard, provides incremental required, recommended and optional disclosures for Scope 2 emissions. The required and optional disclosures from each of these standards often overlap and may not be described precisely the same in each. However, we believe the intent of the disclosures is generally the same. Both sets of required disclosures (see section 4.6.1 below) have to be included in the report that includes the Scope 2 emissions metric for it to be presented in accordance with the GHG Protocol. Recommended (see section 4.6.2 below) and optional (see section 4.6.3 below) disclosures do not have to be included in the report that includes the Scope 2 emissions metric for it to be presented in accordance with the GHG Protocol. Appendix C of this publication includes a disclosure checklist with a comprehensive list of all required, recommended and optional disclosures established by the GHG Protocol.

4.6.1 Required Scope 2 disclosures

The Corporate Standard contains the following required disclosures related to Scope 2 emissions:

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 9

Information on emissions:

- Total Scope 1 and 2 emissions independent of any GHG trades such as sales, purchases, transfers, or banking of allowances.
- Emissions data separately for each scope.
- Emissions data for all six GHGs separately (CO_2, CH_4, N_2O, HFCs, PFCs, SF_6) in metric tonnes and in tonnes of CO_2 equivalent
- Methodologies used to calculate or measure emissions, providing a reference or link to any calculation tools used.

[EY note: The Corporate Standard initially included only six GHGs. However, the Corporate Standard was amended in 2013 to add NF_3 as a seventh GHG for disclosure under the GHG Protocol.]

The Scope 2 Guidance contains the following additional required disclosures related to Scope 2 emissions (see section 6.1 of this publication for general required disclosures in the Scope 2 Guidance):

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 7

For companies with operations only in markets that do not provide product or supplier-specific data or other contractual instruments:

- Only one Scope 2 result **shall** be reported, based on the location-based method.

For companies with any operations in markets providing product or supplier-specific data in the form of contractual instruments (Markets are increasingly developing and refining purchasing options, and the list is not exhaustive. Currently this includes the EU Economic Area, the U.S., Australia, most Latin American countries, Japan, and India, among others.)

- Companies **shall** account and report Scope 2 emissions in two ways and label each result according to the method: one based on the location-based method, and one based on the market-based method.
- Many companies' GHG inventories will include a mix of operations globally, some where the market-based method applies and some where it does not. Companies **shall** account for and report all operations' Scope 2 emissions according to both methods.
    - To do so, emissions from any operations in locations that do not support a market-based method approach **shall** be calculated using the location-based method (making such operations' results identical for location-based and market-based methods). Companies should note what percentage of their overall electricity consumption reported in the market-based method reflects actual markets with contractual information.

Scope 2 Quality Criteria [EY note: Certain non-disclosure related requirements and optional disclosures omitted from this excerpt]

- If a residual mix is not currently available, reporters **shall** note that an adjusted emissions factor is not available or has not been estimated to account for voluntary purchases and this may result in double counting between electricity consumers.

Inventory totals. [EY note: Certain optional disclosures omitted from this excerpt]

- If reporting a single corporate inventory total, the Scope 2 method used should be the same as the one used for goal setting. Companies **shall** disclose which method was chosen for this purpose.

Methodology disclosure. Companies **shall** disclose methods used for Scope 2 accounting. For the market-based method, companies **shall** disclose the category or categories of instruments from which the emission factors were derived, where possible specifying the energy generation technologies.

A reporting entity is required to disclose Scope 2 emissions using the LBM or both the LBM and MBM, depending on the nature of the energy markets where it has operations (see section 4.3.1 above). We believe that a reporting entity with operations in the US, Canada, EU Member States, European Economic Area, Australia, most Latin American countries, Japan or India is generally required to report using both the LBM and the MBM.

If a reporting entity is required to disclose Scope 2 emissions under both methods (i.e., dual report) but only has an LBM value (i.e., its LBM and MBM values are the same), it is required to disclose the LBM value for its MBM value and should consider disclosing that the values are the same for the current year because of the lack of contractual instruments and residual mix factors.

A reporting entity is required to report the following amounts of Scope 2 emissions under both methods:

- Total Scope 2 emissions in units of CO_2e, separately from Scope 1 emissions
- Total Scope 2 emissions disaggregated by each of the seven GHGs separately in metric tons of each GHG and metric tons of CO_2e

These disclosures have to be presented on a gross basis (i.e., without the impact of any GHG sales, purchases, transfers or allowances).

A reporting entity also has to describe any estimation methodologies used to calculate Scope 2 emissions (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies), including providing a reference or link to any calculation tools used. We believe that this disclosure should include references to the emissions factors used, a description of the data sources used (e.g., to the extent material, actual activity data or estimated activity data) and a description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation.

When a reporting entity presents Scope 2 emissions using the MBM and a residual mix emissions factor is not available, it discloses that fact and that, as a result, electricity may be double counted among consumers. Additionally, the reporting entity discloses the category or categories of contractual instruments (e.g., RECs, green tariffs, supplier-specific) that are the basis for the MBM emissions factors, specifying the energy generation technologies underlying those contractual instruments where possible.

A reporting entity that presents the total of Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions in CO_2e has the option to present a single total or a total using the LBM and a total using the MBM. If a reporting entity presents a single total, the method used for that total should be the same as the one used for goal setting and has to be disclosed.

The following example illustrates how a reporting entity may calculate Scope 2 emissions on an aggregated and disaggregated basis and should disclose this information.

Illustration 4-4: Calculation and disclosure of Scope 2 emissions

Company A has manufacturing facilities across the US and the EU. Company A has entered into PPAs, purchased EACs (in the form of renewable energy credits) and has a direct power agreement for certain facilities. Given it operates in a market that has contractual instruments, Company A is required to report using both the LBM and MBM.

Company A's Scope 2 electricity consumption is included in the charts below, which also shows the CO_2e emissions factors applied for the respective calculation method (i.e., LBM or MBM) based on the emissions factor hierarchy.

Activity data in reporting period			Location-based method			
Facility	**Energy consumption (MWh)**	**Energy type**	**Most accurate emissions factor***	**GHG**	**Emissions factor (mt GHG/MWh)**	**GHG emissions (mt)**
US Ops	100,000	Grid-distributed with PPA	Subnational grid average	CO_2	0.396000	39,600.0
				CH_4	0.000033	3.3
				N_2O	0.000005	0.5
				CO_2e	0.398289	39,828.9
	200,000	Grid-distributed with EAC	Subnational grid average	CO_2	0.396000	79,200.0
				CH_4	0.000033	6.6
				N_2O	0.000005	1.0
				CO_2e	0.398289	79,657.8
	100,000	Direct line from single supplier	Supplier-specific rate	CO_2	0.365000	36,500.0
				CH_4	0.000020	2.0
				N_2O	0.000004	0.4
				CO_2e	0.366652	36,665.2
	100,000	Grid-distributed	Subnational grid average	CO_2	0.396000	39,600.0
				CH_4	0.000033	3.3
				N_2O	0.000005	0.5
				CO_2e	0.398289	39,828.9
EU Ops	300,000	Grid from single supplier	National grid average (Country A)	CO_2	0.403333	120,999.9
				CH_4	0.000017	5.1
				N_2O	0.000002	0.6
				CO_2e	0.404355	121,306.5
	200,000	Grid-distributed	National grid average (Country B)	CO_2	0.401500	80,300.0
				CH_4	0.000017	3.4
				N_2O	0.000002	0.4
				CO_2e	0.402522	80,504.4
				Total	**CO_2**	**396,199.9**
					CH_4	**23.7**
					N_2O	**3.4**
					CO_2e	**397,791.7**

Activity data in reporting period			Market-based method			
Facility	**Energy consumption (MWh)**	**Energy type**	**Most accurate emissions factor***	**GHG**	**Emissions factor (mt GHG / MWh)**	**GHG emissions (mt)**
US Ops	100,000	Grid-distributed with PPA	PPA with REC retention by purchaser	CO_2	0.000000	–
				CH_4	0.000000	–
				N_2O	0.000000	–
				CO_2e	0.000000	–
	200,000	Grid-distributed with EAC	EAC purchase	CO_2	0.000000	–
				CH_4	0.000000	–
				N_2O	0.000000	–
				CO_2e	0.000000	–
	100,000	Direct line from single supplier	Supplier-specific rate	CO_2	0.365000	36,500.0
				CH_4	0.000020	2.0
				N_2O	0.000004	0.4
				CO_2e	0.366652	36,665.2
	100,000	Grid-distributed	Grid average (no residual mix factor available)	CO_2	0.396000	39,600.0
				CH_4	0.000033	3.3
				N_2O	0.000005	0.5
				CO_2e	0.398289	39,828.9
EU Ops	300,000	Grid from single supplier	Supplier-specific rate	CO_2	0.365020	109,506.0
				CH_4	0.000028	8.4
				N_2O	0.000004	1.2
				CO_2e	0.366896	110,068.8
	200,000	Grid-distributed	Residual mix	CO_2	0.485000	97,000.0
				CH_4	0.000037	7.4
				N_2O	0.000006	1.2
				CO_2e	0.487674	97,534.8
				Total	**CO_2**	**282,606.0**
					CH_4	**21.1**
					N_2O	**3.3**
					CO_2e	**284,097.7**

* These emissions factors meet the Scope 2 quality criteria

Since Company A reports under the GHG Protocol, it is required to dual report this information in CO_2e and by each GHG. This disclosure could be provided using the following format:

Scope 2 GHG emissions by type:

	Scope 1		Scope 2 MBM		Scope 2 LBM	
	Metric tons	**Metric tons of CO_2e**	**Metric tons**	**Metric tons of CO_2e**	**Metric tons**	**Metric tons of CO_2e**
CO_2 emissions	xx	xx	282,606.0	282,606.0	396,199.9	396,199.9
CH_4 emissions	xx	xx	21.1	590.8	23.7	663.6
N_2O emissions	xx	xx	3.3	900.9	3.4	928.2
Total		xx		284,035.6		397,751.0

Note that the table above does not include all required disclosures for Scope 2 emissions. It is intended to show one way of presenting the Scope 2 emissions metric. See above for a list of all required disclosures related to Scope 2 emissions.

See section 6.1 of this publication for the required disclosures in the Scope 2 guidance that are not specifically related to Scope 2 emissions.

4.6.2 Recommended Scope 2 disclosures

The Scope 2 Guidance recommends that a reporting entity provide the following disclosures. Recommended disclosures are only included in the Scope 2 Guidance (i.e., the Corporate Standard and Scope 3 Standard do not include recommended disclosures). Although these disclosures are not required by the GHG Protocol, we believe they should be made if the reporting entity determines that excluding them would make the presentation of the GHG emissions misleading.

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 7

Annual electricity consumption. Companies **should** report total electricity, steam, heat, and cooling per reporting period separately from the scopes totals (in kWh, MWh, BTU, etc.), which should include all Scope 2 activity data as well as the quantity of energy consumed from owned/operated installations (which may be only reported in Scope 1 and not in Scope 2.)

Biogenic emissions. Companies **should** separately report the biogenic CO_2 emissions from electricity use (e.g. from biomass combustion in the electricity value chain) separately from the scopes, while any CH_4 and N_2O emissions should be reported in Scope 2.

- Companies **should** document if any GHG emissions other than CO_2 (particularly CH_4 and N_2O) are not available for, or excluded from, location-based grid average emissions factors or with the market-based method information.

Other instrument retirement. Companies **should** disclose additional certificate or other instrument retirement performed in conjunction with their voluntary claim, such as with certificate multipliers or any pairing required by regulatory policy.

Instrument features. Where relevant, companies **should** disclose key features associated with their contractual instruments claimed, including any instrument certification labels that entail their own set of eligibility criteria, as well as characteristics of the energy generation facility itself and the policy context of the instrument. These features are elaborated in Chapter 8.

Role of corporate procurement in driving new projects. Where relevant, companies **should** elaborate in narrative disclosure how any of the contractual instruments claimed in the market-based method reflect a substantive contribution by the company in helping implement new low-carbon projects.

Certain required Scope 3 disclosures from the Scope 2 Guidance are not included in the excerpt above but are included and discussed in Chapter 5 of this publication.

The Scope 2 guidance recommends a reporting entity disclose the following information related to Scope 2 emissions:

- Total energy consumption (i.e., both Scope 2 activity data and energy consumption from owned and operated installations included in Scope 1) from electricity, steam, heat and cooling in the applicable energy unit (e.g., MWh, BTU)
- Biogenic CO_2 emissions from electricity use separately from Scope 1, Scope 2 or Scope 3
- Whether any other GHG emissions other than CO_2 associated with biogenic emissions from electricity use have been excluded from the LBM grid average emissions factors or the MBM information applied (e.g., have CH_4 and N_2O been excluded?)
- Additional instruments that were required to be retired to meet regulatory reporting requirements in connection with the retirement of instruments applied to Scope 2 MBM emissions (e.g., certificate multipliers or other pairings required by regulatory policy)
- Key features of the contractual instruments claimed, including any instrument certification labels with their own set of eligibility criteria, as well as a description of the energy generation facility and the policy context of the instrument
- If applicable, narrative disclosure about how the contractual instruments claimed in the reported Scope 2 MBM emissions reflect a substantive contribution by the reporting entity in helping implement new low-carbon projects

4.6.3 Optional Scope 2 disclosures

The Scope 2 Guidance and Corporate Standard include optional disclosures. Although these disclosures are not required by the GHG Protocol, we believe they should be made if the reporting entity determines that excluding them would make the presentation of the GHG emissions misleading.

The Corporate Standard contains the following optional disclosures related to Scope 2 emissions:

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 9

Information on emissions and performance:

- Emissions data further subdivided, where this aids transparency, by business units/facilities, country, source types (stationary combustion, process, fugitive, etc.), and activity types (production of electricity, transportation, generation of purchased electricity that is sold to end users, etc.).
- Emissions attributable to the generation of electricity, heat or steam that is purchased for re-sale to non-end users (see chapter 4).
- Emissions from GHGs not covered by the Kyoto Protocol (e.g., CFCs, NOx,), reported separately from scopes.

General disclosures and disclosures related to Scope 1 and Scope 3 are omitted from the excerpt above but are included and discussed in Chapters 6, 3 and 5 of this publication, respectively. The Scope 2 Guidance contains the following additional optional disclosures related to Scope 2 emissions:

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 7

Companies may provide a reference to an internal or external third-party assurance process, or assurance of conformance provided by a certification program, supplier label, green power program, etc. An attestation form may be used to describe the chain of custody of purchased certificates or other contractual instruments.

Inventory totals. For companies adding together Scope 1 and Scope 2 for a final inventory total, companies may either report two corporate inventory totals (one reflecting each Scope 2 method), or may report a single corporate inventory total reflecting one of the Scope 2 methods.

Scope 2 totals disaggregated by country. This can improve transparency on where market-based method totals differ from location-based.

Avoided emissions estimation. Consistent with Chapter 8 of the *Corporate Standard*, companies **may** separately report an estimation of GHG emissions avoided from a project or action (also see Section 6.9). This quantification should be based on project-level accounting, with methodologies and assumptions documented (including to what the reduction is being compared). See the *GHG Project Protocol* and *GHG Protocol Guidelines for Grid-Connected Electricity Projects* for example methodologies.

Advanced grid study estimations. Where advanced studies (or real-time information) are available, companies **may** report Scope 2 estimations separately as a comparison to location-based grid average estimations, and companies can document where this data specifically informed efficiency decision making or time-of-day operations. Because these studies or analyses may be more difficult to use widely across facilities or to standardize/aggregate consistently without double counting, companies should ensure that any data used for this purpose has addressed data sourcing and boundaries consistent with the location-based method.

Scope 2 results calculated by other methods. If companies are subject to mandatory corporate reporting requirements for facilities in a particular region/nation that specify methodologies other than the two required for dual reporting, these companies **may** report these results separately from the scopes.

Disclose purchases that did not meet Scope 2 quality criteria. If a reporting entity's energy purchases did not meet all Scope 2 Quality Criteria, the entity **may** note this separately. This note should detail which Criteria have been met, with details of why the remaining Criteria have not. This will provide external stakeholders with the information they require, and allow the reporting entity to disclose the efforts made to adhere to the guidance. (As noted in Chapter 6, location-based method data will be used as proxy emission factors in the market-based method total.)

A reporting entity has the option to disclose Scope 2 emissions data at a more disaggregated level than required if the disclosure helps make the report more transparent. This disaggregation could include data by business unit, country (which could improve the transparency on where MBM totals differ from LBM totals), source type (as discussed in section 4.2 of this publication) or activity type (e.g., transportation, generation of electricity).

Other optional Scope 2 disclosures include:

- Reference to internal or external assurance processes or reports, including those related to contractual instruments
- Two corporate inventory totals of Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions (one reflecting the LBM Scope 2 amount and one reflecting the MBM Scope 2 amount), or a single total reflecting one of the Scope 2 method amounts
- Scope 2 emissions from the generation of electricity, heat or steam that is purchased for resale to non-end users
- Scope 2 emissions from GHGs that are not CO_2, CH_4, N_2O, HFCs, PFCs, SF_6 or NF_3 but have a GWP identified by the IPCC, separately from the emissions for the reported Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3, along with a list of those GHGs included in the inventory
- An estimate of avoided emissions based on project-level accounting and the methodologies and assumptions applied
- Scope 2 emissions estimate using an advanced grid study (or real-time) information for comparison with the Scope 2 LBM grid average emissions
    - If such an estimate is disclosed, the reporting entity may also disclose information on how the use of advanced grid study (or real-time) information has informed efficiency decision-making or time-of-day operations.
- Scope 2 emissions calculated using methods other than the LBM and MBM that are required by mandatory corporate reporting requirements in a particular region
- Purchased instruments that did not meet the Scope 2 quality criteria and, therefore, were not included in the entity's Scope 2 MBM emissions calculation
    - A reporting entity should disclose the criteria that were met and why the remaining criteria were not met. We believe that additional calculations of Scope 2 MBM emissions that include instruments that do not meet the Scope 2 quality criteria (e.g., "Scope 2 MBM would be XX considering these instruments") should not be disclosed because they could be misleading.

See section 6.2 of this publication for other optional disclosures included in the GHG Protocol that are not specifically related to Scope 2 emissions.

4.6.4 Scope 2 reporting requirements from the California climate laws, ESRS and ISSB standards (updated June 2025)

California SB-253 requires reporting entities that had more than $1 billion in annual revenue in the previous fiscal year and do business in California to annually disclose their Scope 2 emissions in accordance with the GHG Protocol. These disclosures should be made in metric tons of CO_2e, both in the aggregate for Scope 2 and for each of the seven GHGs for Scope 2. California SB-261 requires reporting entities with more than $500 million in annual revenue that do business in California to biennially disclose climate-related information in accordance with the TCFD's recommendations, which include reporting Scope 2 emissions.

The ESRS require an entity to separately disclose aggregate Scope 2 emissions, if material, in metric tons of CO_2e, with the impact of purchased or generated offsets excluded and separately disclosed. An entity is permitted to disaggregate those emissions, including by the seven GHGs or by country, but disaggregation is not required. The ESRS require disclosure of Scope 2 emissions, if material, using both the LBM and the MBM. For an intensity metric, the ESRS require an entity to only disclose its total emissions (inclusive of Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions) using both an LBM and an MBM per monetary unit of net revenue.

The ISSB standards require a reporting entity to disclose aggregate Scope 2 emissions in metric tons of CO_2e, but a reporting entity is generally not required to report emissions for each of the seven GHGs unless disaggregation of one or more of the constituent gases provides material information that would otherwise be obscured if aggregated. The impact of purchased or generated offsets is excluded from these calculations and separately disclosed. The ISSB standards require a reporting entity to disclose its Scope 2 emissions using an LBM and provide relevant information about contractual instruments related to managing the energy it has purchased. Scope 2 emissions are only required to be disclosed if material. Disclosure of intensity metrics is not required.

5 Scope 3 emissions (updated December 2024)

5.1 Definition

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Glossary

Scope 3 emissions: All indirect emissions (not included in Scope 2) that occur in the value chain of the reporting company, including both upstream and downstream emissions.

Value chain: In this standard, "value chain" refers to all of the upstream and downstream activities associated with the operations of the reporting company, including the use of sold products by consumers and the end-of-life treatment of sold products after consumer use.

Upstream emissions: Indirect GHG emissions from purchased or acquired goods and services.

Downstream emissions: Indirect GHG emissions from sold goods and services. Downstream emissions also include emissions from products that are distributed but not sold (i.e., without receiving payment).

Scope 3 emissions are all indirect upstream and downstream emissions that occur in the value chain of the reporting entity, except for indirect emissions from purchased or acquired electricity, steam, heating or cooling consumed by the reporting entity (i.e., Scope 2 emissions). Examples of Scope 3 emissions from upstream activities include the production and third-party transportation of purchased or acquired goods and services while examples from downstream activities include the emissions generated from the use or consumption of sold goods and services.

The Scope 3 Standard provides requirements and a step-by-step approach to report Scope 3 emissions. The Scope 3 Standard categorizes Scope 3 emissions into 15 distinct categories, which are intended to capture the various emissions sources from activities within the reporting entity's value chain and to organize Scope 3 emissions to make them more comparable over time and across entities. The categories are designed to be mutually exclusive with no double counting of emissions between categories. These categories are as follows:

Category	Category description[18]
1. Purchased goods and services	Extraction, production and transportation of goods and services purchased or acquired by the reporting company in the reporting year and not otherwise included in Categories 2–8
2. Capital goods	Extraction, production and transportation of capital goods purchased or acquired by the reporting company in the reporting year

[18] As stated in table 5.4 of the *GHG Protocol Corporate Value Chain (Scope 3) Accounting and Reporting Standard*.

Category	Category description[18]
3. Fuel- and energy-related activities (not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2)	Extraction, production and transportation of fuels and energy purchased or acquired by the reporting company in the reporting year that are not already accounted for in Scope 1 or Scope 2, including: a. Upstream emissions of purchased fuels (extraction, production and transportation of fuels consumed by the reporting company) b. Upstream emissions of purchased electricity (extraction, production and transportation of fuels consumed in the generation of electricity, steam, heating and cooling consumed by the reporting company) c. Transmission and distribution (T&D) losses (generation of electricity, steam, heating and cooling that is consumed (i.e., lost) in a T&D system) — reported by end user d. Generation of purchased electricity that is sold to end users (generation of electricity, steam, heating and cooling that is purchased by the reporting company and sold to end users) — reported by utility company or energy retailer only
4. Upstream transportation and distribution	Transportation and distribution of products purchased by the reporting company in the reporting year between a company's tier 1 suppliers[19] and its own operations (in vehicles and facilities not owned or controlled by the reporting company) Transportation and distribution services purchased by the reporting company in the reporting year, including inbound logistics, outbound logistics (e.g., of sold products), and transportation and distribution among a company's own facilities (in vehicles and facilities not owned or controlled by the reporting company)
5. Waste generated in operations	Disposal and treatment of waste generated in the reporting company's operations in the reporting year (in facilities not owned or controlled by the reporting company)
6. Business travel	Transportation of employees for business-related activities during the reporting year (in vehicles not owned or operated by the reporting company)
7. Employee commuting	Transportation of employees between their homes and their worksites during the reporting year (in vehicles not owned or operated by the reporting company)
8. Upstream leased assets	Operation of assets leased by the reporting company (lessee) in the reporting year and not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2 — reported by lessee
9. Downstream transportation and distribution	Transportation and distribution of products sold by the reporting company in the reporting year between the reporting company's operations and the end consumer (if not paid for by the reporting company), including retail and storage (in vehicles and facilities not owned or controlled by the reporting company)
10. Processing of sold products	Processing of intermediate products sold in the reporting year by downstream companies (e.g., manufacturers)
11. Use of sold products	End use of goods and services sold by the reporting company in the reporting year
12. End-of-life treatment of sold products	Waste disposal and treatment of products sold by the reporting company (in the reporting year) at the end of their life
13. Downstream leased assets	Operation of assets owned by the reporting company (lessor) and leased to other entities in the reporting year, not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2 — reported by lessor
14. Franchises	Operation of franchises in the reporting year, not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2 — reported by franchisor
15. Investments	Operation of investments (including equity and debt investments and project finance) in the reporting year, not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2

[19] Tier 1 suppliers are suppliers with which the reporting entity has a purchase order for goods or services, while Tier 2 suppliers are suppliers with which a reporting entity's Tier 1 suppliers have a purchase order.

Occasionally, a reporting entity may have material emissions that do not fit into one of the 15 categories listed above. In these instances, the reporting entity should consider optionally reporting these emissions separately from the Scope 3 inventory and making the relevant applicable disclosures.

5.2 Time boundary

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

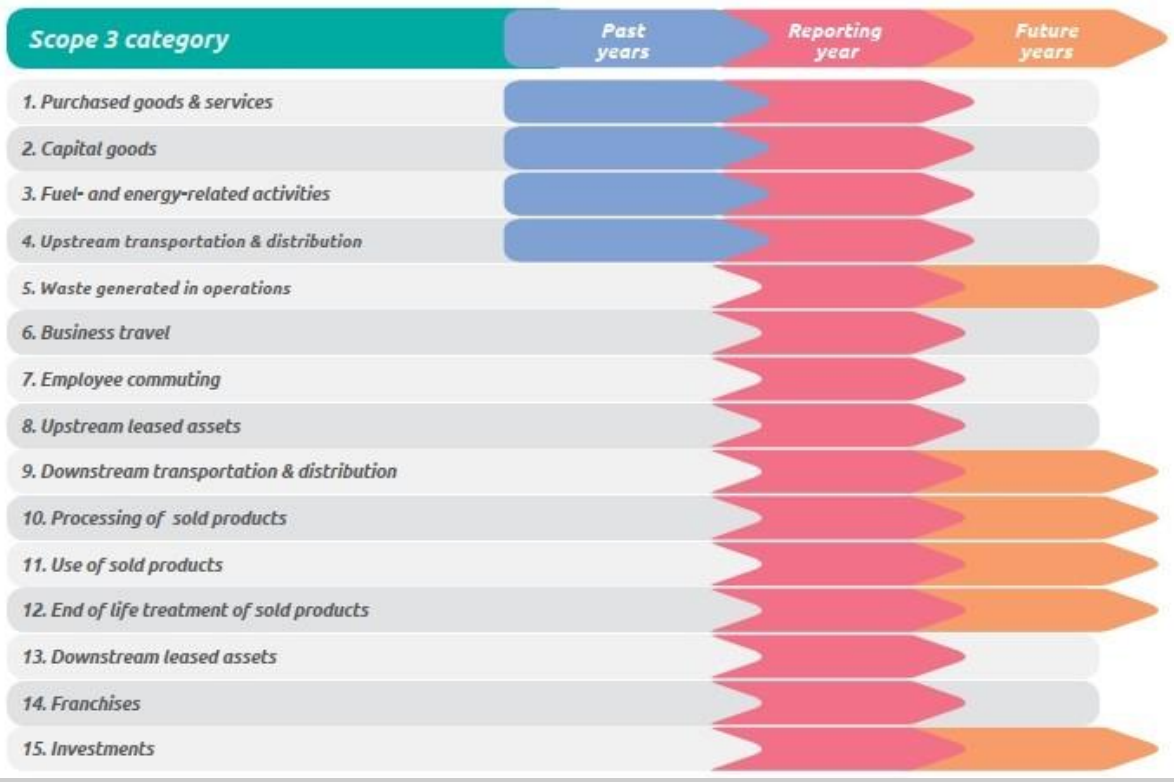
Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 5

Time boundary of Scope 3 categories

This standard is designed to account for all emissions related to the reporting company's activities in the reporting year (e.g., emissions related to products purchased or sold in the reporting year). For some Scope 3 categories, emissions occur simultaneously with the activity (e.g., from combustion of energy), so emissions occur in the same year as the company's activities (see figure 5.3). For some categories, emissions may have occurred in previous years. For other Scope 3 categories, emissions are expected to occur in future years because the activities in the reporting year have long-term emissions impacts. For these categories, reported emissions have not yet happened, but are expected to happen as a result of the waste generated, investments made, and products sold in the reporting year. For these categories, the reported data should not be interpreted to mean that emissions have already occurred, but that emissions are expected to occur as a result of activities that occurred in the reporting year.

Figure [5.3] Time boundary of scope 3 categories



A reporting entity's reported annual Scope 3 emissions represent the emissions in the value chain (regardless of the year those emissions occur) resulting from the reporting entity's activities in the current reporting year. That is, a reporting entity's Scope 3 emissions may include emissions from parties in the value chain that occurred in a prior year or are expected to occur in a future year if those

emissions are a result of activities of the reporting entity in the current year. For example, a vendor's emissions from the production of raw materials that occurred in the year prior to the reporting entity's purchase of those materials are reported as Scope 3 emissions in the year the reporting entity purchases the raw materials. Similarly, a customer's emissions from the disposal of a product sold by the reporting entity are reported as Scope 3 emissions (Category 12, *End of life treatment of sold products*) in the year the reporting entity sells that product even though those emissions likely won't occur until future years. The figure above from the Scope 3 Standard details the 15 Scope 3 emissions categories and the time boundary considerations for each category.

5.3 Identifying relevant categories (updated June 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

6.1 Mapping the value chain

Companies should map the value chain as a first step toward identifying the Scope 3 activities that are included in the inventory. This step is a useful internal exercise to help companies identify Scope 3 activities. To the extent possible, companies should create a complete value chain map and/or a complete list of activities in the company's value chain that includes:

- Each of the Scope 3 categories and activities included in table 5.4
- A list of purchased goods and services and a list of sold goods and services
- A list of suppliers and other relevant value chain partners (either by name, type, or spend category)

Because supply chains are dynamic and a company's supply chain partners can change frequently throughout the reporting year, companies may find it useful to choose a fixed point in time (such as December 31 of the reporting year) or use a representative average of products and suppliers over the course of the reporting year.

Companies should strive for completeness in mapping the value chain, but it is acknowledged that achieving 100 percent completeness may not be feasible. Companies may establish their own policy for mapping the value chain, which may include creating representative, rather than exhaustive, lists of purchased products, sold products, suppliers, and other value chain partners.

6.2 Boundary requirements

Companies shall account for all Scope 3 emissions as defined in this standard and disclose and justify any exclusions. Companies shall account for emissions from each Scope 3 category according to the minimum boundaries provided in table 5.4. Companies may include emissions from optional activities within each category. Companies shall account for Scope 3 emissions of carbon dioxide (CO_2), methane (CH_4), nitrous oxide (N_2O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), and sulphur hexafluoride (SF_6), if they are emitted in the value chain. Companies may exclude Scope 3 activities from the inventory, provided that any exclusion is disclosed and justified.

[EY note: The Corporate Standard initially included only six GHGs. However, the Corporate Standard was amended in 2013 to add NF_3 as a seventh GHG for disclosure under the GHG Protocol.]

To identify all potential Scope 3 emissions within their value chain, the Scope 3 Standard recommends that a reporting entity list all Scope 3 categories and classify all purchased goods and services, sold goods and services, and suppliers and other partners in the relevant category. A reporting entity may change vendors throughout the year, so it may choose a fixed point in time for (e.g., 31 December of the reporting year) or use a representative average of products and suppliers over the course of the reporting year.

The Scope 3 Standard requires that a reporting entity account for all Scope 3 emissions within its reporting boundary in line with the minimum boundaries defined in each Scope 3 category. The Scope 3 Standard sets the minimum boundaries (i.e., the activities that must be included within each Scope 3 emissions category, if relevant) for each category. The Scope 3 Standard includes these boundaries so that major activities are included within a Scope 3 inventory, without requiring that every emission from every entity or activity in the reporting entity's entire value chain be identified and evaluated for inclusion in the inventory. The minimum boundaries for each category are listed in table 5.4 of the Scope 3 Standard and discussed in the guidance on Scope 3 emissions categories and calculation approaches within this chapter.

In addition to defining the minimum boundaries for required reporting, the Scope 3 Standard also provides optional activities for reporting within each category. If a reporting entity elects to report emissions from these optional activities, the reporting entity must make all required disclosures related to those emissions. That is, reporting on emissions for certain activities is optional. However, once a reporting entity has decided to report those emissions, the related disclosures are required and are no longer optional.

How we see it

When determining whether to report emissions from optional activities, a reporting entity should consider whether their report would be misleading if they did not include those activities. For example, emissions from teleworking are considered an optional activity for Scope 3, Category 7, *Employee commuting*, emissions. However, if the majority of a reporting entity's employees work from home, it should consider including those emissions as the report may be incomplete without them.

5.3.1 Exclusions (updated June 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

6.3 Disclosing and justifying exclusions

Companies should strive for completeness, but it is acknowledged that accounting for all Scope 3 emissions may not be feasible. Some categories may not be applicable to all companies. For example, some companies may not have leased assets or franchises. In such cases, companies should report zero emissions or "not applicable" for any categories that are not applicable. In some situations, companies may have Scope 3 activities, but be unable to estimate emissions due to a lack of data or other limiting factors. For example, companies may find that based on initial estimates, some Scope 3 activities are expected to be insignificant in size (compared to the company's other sources of emissions) and that for these activities, the ability to collect data and influence GHG reductions is limited. In such cases, companies may exclude Scope 3 activities from the report, provided that any exclusion is disclosed and justified.

Companies should follow the principles of relevance, completeness, accuracy, consistency, and transparency when deciding whether to exclude any activities from the Scope 3 inventory. Companies should not exclude any activity that would compromise the relevance of the reported inventory. (See table 6.1 for a list of criteria for determining relevance.) Companies should ensure that the Scope 3 inventory appropriately reflects the GHG emissions of the company, and serves the decision-making needs of users, both internal and external to the company.

In particular, companies should not exclude any activity that is expected to contribute significantly to the company's total Scope 3 emissions. (See section 7.1 for guidance on prioritizing emissions.)

Companies are required to disclose and justify any exclusions in the public report (see chapter 11).

The Scope 3 Standard acknowledges that not all categories are applicable to all reporting entities. Additionally, a reporting entity may find after estimating some Scope 3 categories that certain categories are not relevant to the reported information. A reporting entity must justify and disclose the exclusion of any Scope 3 category and disclose that any non-applicable categories have zero emissions or do not apply.

A reporting entity needs to consider the principles of relevance, completeness, accuracy, consistency and transparency discussed in section 1.4 of this publication when determining if it is appropriate to exclude activities generating Scope 3 emissions. We believe that exclusions are not consistent with the principle of completeness and that a reporting entity should strive to report all emissions sources. Therefore, to report in accordance with the Scope 3 Standard, a reporting entity will need to sufficiently support that those exclusions are not relevant (otherwise the exclusion may be considered an error).

When evaluating the relevance of the Scope 3 emissions category, consider the following criteria (which are based on table 6.1 from the Scope 3 Standard):

- Size: Do these emissions contribute significantly to the total anticipated Scope 3 emissions? A reporting entity should not exclude any activity that contributes significantly to the total Scope 3 emissions. One possible method reporting entities may use to determine the size of emissions in each category is by screening, which is the process of using less specific data and calculation methods to estimate the size of GHG emissions in each category.
- Influence: Can the actions of the reporting entity impact the amount of these emissions? A reporting entity should prioritize reporting emissions that it can influence.
- Risk: Do these emissions contribute to the reporting entity's climate-change-related risks (i.e., financial, regulatory, supply chain, product and customer, legal, or reputational risks)? A reporting entity should prioritize reporting emissions that contribute to climate-change-related risks.
- Stakeholders: Are these emissions considered significant by key stakeholders, including customers, suppliers, investors and society? A reporting entity should focus on emissions considered significant by key stakeholders.
- Outsourcing: Are these emissions generated by activities previously performed in-house or activities typically performed in-house by other similar entities? A reporting entity should consider reporting outsourced emissions if they are significant or if reporting this information will make the emissions information more easily comparable to prior periods or other similar reporting entities. In addition to indicating that a Scope 3 category may be significant, outsourcing activities can also trigger a base year recalculation, as discussed further in section 2.7.2.2.
- Sector guidance: Are the emissions considered significant in sector-specific guidance? A reporting entity should consider prioritizing reporting emissions that are significant to their sector.
- Other: Are there any other sources of guidance, such as guidance developed by the reporting entity or industry, which would consider these emissions significant? A reporting entity should consider prioritizing reporting emissions that other sources of guidance indicate are significant.

How we see it

The criteria listed above are part of a framework intended to guide entities through the concept of relevance and are not a comprehensive list. Judgment may be required to determine whether certain emissions are relevant. Further, an emissions source does not need to meet each of the criteria above to be considered relevant. If an emissions source is considered relevant under one of the criteria, it generally should be included. For example, an entity may consider an emissions source not relevant based on size, but it may be part of targets or goals that are considered significant by the entity's key stakeholders. In this case, the emissions source would be considered relevant and need to be included.

Entities should work closely with their assurance providers when evaluating the criteria above. An assurance provider may consider an emissions source to be relevant if the exclusion is not sufficiently supported using the relevance criteria or based on the provider's internally developed materiality threshold.

A reporting entity must apply these considerations to each exclusion individually, as well as the aggregate of all exclusions across the reported Scope 3 emissions categories. Individual exclusions may not be relevant when isolated but could aggregate to an amount that would influence the users of the report (i.e., be material based on size).

Illustration 5-1: Evaluating exclusions

Entity A is a manufacturing entity with no franchises or investments. Through its manufacturing processes, Entity A generates high quantities of industrial waste. Entity A has identified that Scope 3, Category 14, *Franchises*, and Scope 3, Category 15, *Investments*, are not relevant to its operations and does not calculate or include them in its total Scope 3 GHG emissions value. Entity A is required to disclose that these categories are not applicable and the reason why.

Entity A also considers its Scope 3, Category 5, *Waste generated in operations*, emissions and identifies that the waste from its offices is not measured. After some research, Entity A estimates an average waste per person per office and determines that using this estimate would result in the office waste constituting only 0.001% of its total waste. Due to the uncertainty involved in estimating its office waste and the minimal impact that office waste has on its waste generated in operations, Entity A elects to exclude office waste from its sources of Scope 3 category 5 emissions.

Entity A should still internally monitor its estimate of office waste impacts to continue to substantiate its claim that office waste is immaterial and can be excluded.

5.4 Selecting calculation methods (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Guidance

Introduction

Selecting calculation methods

For most Scope 3 categories, this document offers multiple calculation methods. Within each section, the calculation methods are ranked in order of specificity, from most to least specific to a company's actual activities. In general, more specific methods yield higher quality Scope 3 emissions data whereas less specific methods yield lower quality Scope 3 emissions data. However, the more specific methods are often more time and labor intensive. The best method for each category depends on factors described below.

Companies should select calculation methods for each Scope 3 activity within a category based on the following criteria:

- The relative size of the emissions from the Scope 3 activity
- The company's business goals
- Data availability
- Data quality
- The cost and effort required to apply each method
- Other criteria identified by the company.

Companies should select calculation methods that ensure that the inventory appropriately reflects the GHG emissions of the activities and serves the decision-making needs of users, both internal and external to the company. Note that each Scope 3 category may contain multiple activities (for example air travel and road travel could be two different activities within category 6, Business travel). If appropriate, different calculation methods can be used to calculate emissions from different activities within a category.

The Scope 3 Guidance contains multiple calculation methods for each Scope 3 category, which are detailed in the respective sections below. Certain calculation methods are used for multiple Scope 3 categories, while others are unique to a specific category. Multiple calculation methodologies can be used within each Scope 3 category to capture emissions from different activities within each category. Each calculation methodology has a different level of precision. Generally, a reporting entity should select more precise calculation methods. When selecting the calculation methodology, an entity should consider the following:

- The relative amount of the emissions from the activity (e.g., methodologies for activities that generate a relatively larger portion of emissions should be more specific)
- The relationship of the Scope 3 category (or activity) to the entity's goals (e.g., methodologies for higher priority categories or activities should be more specific)
- The availability of data for the calculation method
- The quality of data available for the calculation method (see section 5.5.4 for a discussion of data quality)
- The cost and effort required to apply the calculation method

An entity may also consider the ability to track GHG emissions and reduce GHG emissions over time when selecting a calculation methodology. Calculation methodologies that use average emissions factors published by sources such as industry bodies or government agencies, including the average-data method and spend-based method, limit the ability of a reporting entity to track its efforts to reduce GHG emissions over time.

A reporting entity may face trade-offs between some of these considerations and should use judgment in its assessment to select a calculation method that results in emissions data that best serves the decision-making needs of users of the data, both internal and external.

See section 5.5.3 of this document for a discussion of prioritizing activities for higher quality data collection and section 5.5.4 for a discussion of data quality. A reporting entity may start with a less specific calculation methodology for screening purposes and then move toward more specific calculation methodologies for the material Categories of Scope 3 to yield higher quality Scope 3 values.

How we see it

As the GHG Protocol does not contemplate every reporting scenario for every reporting entity, there may be certain circumstances where the listed calculation methodologies are not appropriate or are considered misleading. It may be acceptable in these rare instances to use an alternative calculation methodology, which must be documented and validated to make sure it captures the intended emissions for the Scope 3 category.

5.5 Types of data

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 7

7.2 Overview of quantification methods and data types

Overview of primary data and secondary data

Companies may use two types of data to calculate Scope 3 emissions:

- Primary data
- Secondary data

Table 7.3 provides definitions of these two types of data.

Table [7.3] Types of data

Data type	*Description*
Primary Data	Data from specific activities within a company's value chain
Secondary Data	Data that is not from specific activities within a company's value chain

Primary data includes data provided by suppliers or other value chain partners related to specific activities in the reporting company's value chain. Such data may take the form of primary activity data, or emissions data calculated by suppliers that are specific to suppliers' activities.

Secondary data includes industry-average-data (*e.g.*, from published databases, government statistics, literature studies, and industry associations), financial data, proxy data, and other generic data. In certain cases, companies may use specific data from one activity in the value chain to estimate emissions for another activity in the value chain. This type of data (*i.e.*, proxy data) is considered secondary data, since it is not specific to the activity whose emissions are being calculated.

7.3 Guidance for selecting data

The quality of the *Scope 3* inventory depends on the quality of the data used to calculate emissions. Companies should collect data of sufficient quality to ensure that the inventory appropriately reflects the GHG emissions of the company, supports the company's goals, and serves the decision-making needs of users, both internal and external to the company. After prioritizing *Scope 3* activities (see section 7.1), companies should select data based on the following:

- The company's business goals
- The relative significance of *Scope 3* activities

- The availability of primary and secondary data
- The quality of available data

Companies may use any combination of primary and secondary data to calculate *Scope 3* emissions. …

In general, companies should collect high quality, primary data for high priority activities. To most effectively track performance, companies should use primary data collected from suppliers and other value chain partners for *Scope 3* activities targeted for achieving GHG reductions.

In some cases, primary data may not be available or may not be of sufficient quality. In such cases, secondary data may be of higher quality than the available primary data for a given activity. Data selection depends on business goals. If the company's main goal is to set GHG reduction targets, track performance from specific operations within the value chain, or engage suppliers, the company should select primary data. If the company's main goal is to understand the relative magnitude of various *Scope 3* activities, identify hot spots, and prioritize efforts in primary data collection, the company should select secondary data. In general, companies should collect secondary data for:

- Activities not prioritized based on initial estimation methods or other criteria (see section 7.1)
- Activities for which primary data is not available (e.g., where a value chain partner is unable to provide data)
- Activities for which the quality of secondary data is higher than primary data (e.g., when a value chain partner is unable to provide data of sufficient quality)

Companies are required to report a description of the types and sources of data (including activity data, emission factors, and GWP values) used to calculate emissions, and the percentage of emissions calculated using data obtained from suppliers or other value chain partners (see chapter 11).

A reporting entity may use either primary or secondary data to calculate Scope 3 emissions. See section 5.5.3 for a discussion of how a reporting entity should prioritize data collection. Primary data, if available, may be of higher quality than secondary data. A reporting entity should collect primary data for high priority activities and for activities for which GHG reduction targets have been set. Secondary data may be used for lower priority activities, activities for which primary data is not available or activities where the quality of the secondary data is higher than the quality of the primary data available (see section 5.5.4 for a discussion of data quality). Section 5.11.1 discusses the required disclosures related to data used, including the requirement to disclose the percentage of emissions calculated using data obtained from suppliers or other value chain partners (i.e., primary data). The table below, which is based on table 7.4 of the Scope 3 Standard, provides examples of primary and secondary data from each Scope 3 category:

Category	Examples of primary data	Examples of secondary data
1. Purchased goods and services	▸ Product-level cradle-to-gate GHG data from suppliers calculated using site-specific data ▸ Site-specific energy use or emissions data from suppliers	▸ Industry average emissions factors per material consumed from lifecycle inventory databases
2. Capital goods	▸ Product-level cradle-to-gate GHG data from suppliers calculated using site-specific data ▸ Site-specific energy use or emissions data from suppliers	▸ Industry average emissions factors per material consumed from lifecycle inventory databases

Category	Examples of primary data	Examples of secondary data
3. Fuel- and energy-related activities (not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2)	▸ Entity-specific data on upstream emissions (e.g., extraction of fuels) ▸ Grid-specific T&D loss rate ▸ Entity-specific power purchase data and generator-specific emission rate for purchased power	▸ National average data on upstream emissions (e.g., from lifecycle inventory database) ▸ National average T&D loss rate ▸ National average power purchase data
4. Upstream transportation and distribution	▸ Activity-specific energy use or emissions data from third-party transportation and distribution suppliers ▸ Actual distance traveled ▸ Carrier-specific emissions factors	▸ Estimated distance traveled by mode based on industry-average data
5. Waste generated in operations	▸ Site-specific emissions data from waste management companies ▸ Entity-specific metric tons of waste generated ▸ Entity-specific emissions factors	▸ Estimated metric tons of waste generated based on industry-average data ▸ Industry average emissions factors
6. Business travel	▸ Activity-specific data from transportation suppliers (e.g., airlines) ▸ Carrier-specific emissions factors	▸ Estimated distance traveled based on industry-average data
7. Employee commuting	▸ Specific distance traveled and mode of transportation collected from employees	▸ Estimated distance traveled based on industry-average data
8. Upstream leased assets	▸ Site-specific energy use data collected by utility bills or meters	▸ Estimated emissions based on industry-average data (e.g., energy use per floor space by building type)
9. Downstream transportation and distribution	▸ Activity-specific energy use or emissions data from third-party transportation and distribution partners ▸ Activity-specific distance traveled ▸ Entity-specific emissions factors (e.g., per metric ton-mile)	▸ Estimated distance traveled based on industry-average data ▸ National average emission factors
10. Processing of sold products	▸ Site-specific energy use or emissions from downstream value chain partners	▸ Estimated energy use based on industry-average data
11. Use of sold products	▸ Specific data collected from consumers	▸ Estimated energy used based on national average statistics on product use
12. End-of-life treatment of sold products	▸ Specific data collected from consumers on disposal rates ▸ Specific data collected from waste management providers on emissions rates or energy use	▸ Estimated disposal rates based on national average statistics ▸ Estimated emissions or energy use based on national average statistics
13. Downstream leased assets	▸ Site-specific energy use data collected by utility bills or meters	▸ Estimated emissions based on industry-average data (e.g., energy use per floor space by building type)
14. Franchises	▸ Site-specific energy use data collected by utility bills or meters	▸ Estimated emissions based on industry-average data (e.g., energy use per floor space by building type)
15. Investments	▸ Site-specific energy use or emissions data	▸ Estimated emissions based on industry-average data

5.5.1 Primary data

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 7

7.4 Guidance for collecting primary data

Primary activity data may be obtained through meter readings, purchase records, utility bills, engineering models, direct monitoring, mass balance, stoichiometry, or other methods for obtaining data from specific activities in the company's value chain.

Where possible, companies should collect energy or emissions data from suppliers and other value chain partners in order to obtain site-specific data for priority Scope 3 categories and activities. To do so, companies should identify relevant suppliers from which to seek GHG data. Suppliers may include contract manufacturers, materials and parts suppliers, capital equipment suppliers, fuel suppliers, third party logistics providers, waste management companies, and other companies that provide goods and services to the reporting company.

Companies should first engage relevant tier 1 suppliers (see figure 7.3). Tier 1 suppliers are companies with which the reporting company has a purchase order for goods or services (e.g., materials, parts, components, etc.). Tier 1 suppliers have contractual obligations with the reporting company, providing the leverage needed to request GHG inventory data.

To be comprehensive, companies may seek to obtain GHG emissions data from all tier 1 suppliers. However, a company may have many small tier 1 suppliers that together comprise only a small share of a company's total activities and spending. Companies may develop their own policy for selecting relevant suppliers to target for primary data collection. For example, a company may select suppliers based on their contribution to its total spend (see box 7.3). A company may also seek data from tier 2 suppliers, where relevant (see box 7.5). Tier 2 suppliers are companies with which tier 1 suppliers have a purchase order for goods and services (see figure 7.3). Companies should use secondary data to calculate emissions from activities where supplier-specific data is not collected or is incomplete.

The type of primary data that should be collected depends on the related Scope 3 category. Where possible, entities should seek to collect primary data from all suppliers and other value chain partners (e.g., customers) with which they have contractual relationships (i.e., Tier 1 suppliers/customers) for priority Scope 3 categories and activities. However, if a large number of Tier 1 suppliers or customers comprise only a small portion of total activities, a reporting entity may establish a policy to only obtain primary data from significant Tier 1 suppliers for those categories and activities (e.g., based on the supplier's share of the entity's total spend for that category or activity).

Primary data may be of higher quality because it is supplier specific and provides a better representation of a reporting entity's value chain partners, allows comparisons between suppliers in the same sector and allows a reporting entity to more accurately track progress toward reduction targets. However, primary data may be costly to obtain and the quality of the data may be difficult to verify.

How we see it

High quality primary data is more specific and allows for better tracking of emissions when compared to secondary data, so it is generally preferred. However, a reporting entity should implement data quality checks to make sure that the primary data it uses is of sufficient quality. Otherwise, secondary data may be preferred.

The Scope 3 Standard contains a hierarchy of primary data based on the level of specificity of the data, as follows (based on table 7.7):

Data type	Description	Level of specificity
Product-level data	Cradle-to-gate GHG emissions for the related product	Higher  Lower
Activity-, process- or production line-level data	GHG emissions and/or activity data for the activities, processes or production lines that produce the related product	
Facility-level data	GHG emissions and/or activity data for the facilities or operations that produce the related product	
Business unit-level data	GHG emissions and/or activity data for the business units that produce the related product	
Corporate-level data	GHG emissions and/or activity data for the entire corporation	

As illustrated by the table above, a reporting entity should seek to collect primary activity and emission data that is as specific as possible to the product purchased from the supplier. If product-specific data is not available, the reporting entity should generally attempt to collect the next most-specific level of data until available data is obtained.

The diversity of the products or services purchased by a reporting entity also affects the determination of the required level of specificity of the primary data used. For example, a reporting entity that purchases multiple products that have significantly different GHG emissions profiles from the same supplier, such as a transportation entity that buys both bicycles and buses from one supplier, should use product-level or facility-level (assuming the different products are produced at different facilities) data. A reporting entity that purchases multiple products that have very similar GHG emissions profiles from the same supplier, such as a transportation entity that buys road bicycles and mountain bicycles from one supplier, could use business unit-level or facility-level data without significantly reducing the quality of the GHG emissions inventory.

The quality of primary data can vary widely and may be difficult to determine. A reporting entity should evaluate the quality of the primary data available using the quality criteria discussed in section 5.5.4. Secondary data should be used if primary data of sufficient quality cannot be identified.

5.5.2 Secondary data

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 7

7.5 Guidance for collecting secondary data and filling data gaps

Collecting secondary data

When using secondary databases, companies should prioritize databases and publications that are internationally recognized, provided by national governments, or peer-reviewed. Companies should use the data-quality indicators in section 7.3 when selecting secondary data sources. The data-quality indicators should be used to select secondary data that are the most representative to the company's activities in terms of technology, time, and geography, and that are the most complete and reliable. A list of available secondary data sources is available at www.ghgprotocol.org.

Secondary data allows a reporting entity to calculate emissions data when primary data is not available or is of insufficient quality. This data can be useful when accounting for emissions from lower priority activities or when estimating the significance of Scope 3 activities. Secondary data is often more cost-effective and easier to collect than primary data. However, secondary data may be lower quality than primary data because it may not be representative of a reporting entity's specific activities (e.g., specific technology or process used, time period, geography). Additionally, secondary data will not reflect the impact of activities taken by specific value chain partners to reduce GHG emissions and, therefore, may limit the ability of a reporting entity to track progress toward GHG reduction targets.

A reporting entity should use the highest quality data possible when using secondary data (see section 5.5.4 for a discussion of data quality). A reporting entity should prioritize the use of secondary data from data sets that are internationally recognized, provided by national governments or peer reviewed. A reporting entity should also understand what is included in the secondary data it uses. For example, a reporting entity that is calculating category 1 emissions may use an emissions factor that includes transportation, resulting in double counting between category 1 and category 4 emissions. Though the secondary data obtained in this example may have been high quality, the reporting entity did not understand what was captured in the data, resulting in an error. Therefore, relying on the quality of the data alone is not enough for a correct emissions calculation.

5.5.2.1 Environmentally-extended input output (EEIO) data (updated June 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Guidance

Environmentally-extended input output (EEIO) data

Environmentally-extended input output (EEIO) models estimate energy use and/or GHG emissions resulting from the production and upstream supply chain activities of different sectors and products in an economy. The resulting EEIO emissions factors can be used to estimate cradle-to-gate GHG emissions for a given industry or product category. EEIO data are particularly useful in screening emissions sources when prioritizing data collection efforts. EEIO models are derived by allocating national GHG emissions to groups of finished products based on economic flows between industry sectors.

The output of EEIO models is typically a quantity of GHGs emitted per unit of revenue in a particular industry sector. For example, an EEIO model may estimate that the sector "paper mills" emits 1,520 tonnes CO_2e per $1 million revenue, meaning that, on average, 1,520 tonnes of CO_2e are emitted during all upstream supply chain activities associated with generating $1 million revenue from that sector.

The advantages of EEIO data include:

- Comprehensive coverage of the entire economy (i.e., no emissions sources are excluded from the system boundary)
- Simplicity of method and application
- Time and cost savings as data requirements are less onerous than in a process-based approach.

The disadvantages of EEIO data include:

- Broad sector averages may not represent nuances of unique processes and products, especially for non-homogenous sectors

- Assumption of linear attribution between monetary and environmental flows provides only indicative results (i.e., EEIO models cannot distinguish between products of different monetary value within a single sector)
- Lacks specificity and accuracy of process-based approaches
- Difficult to measure and demonstrate results of reduction efforts
- EEIO databases are generally limited to a specific geographic region, (e.g., United States) and are not available in some world regions.

Environmentally-extended input output (EEIO) data are typically revenue-based emissions factors used to estimate cradle-to-gate GHG emissions (i.e., all emissions that occur in the lifecycle of purchased products or services, up to the point of receipt by the reporting entity) for a given product category. These emissions factors typically indicate the amount of GHGs emitted per unit of revenue for each product category or industry. EEIO data are calculated using a "top-down" approach of allocating national GHG emissions to groups of finished products and is therefore secondary data.

The EPA publishes EEIO data for supply chain GHG emissions, which are often used to quantify Scope 3 GHG emissions when use of secondary data is appropriate. When leveraging the EPA's EEIO data, a reporting entity needs to align the emissions factor with the minimum boundary, which involves considering whether the EPA supply chain emission factors "with margins" or "without margins" is most appropriate (see section 5.7.1 for discussion of margins).

5.5.2.2 Processed-based data

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Guidance

Process-based data

Process-based data is derived from assessing all the known energy and environmental inputs of a particular process and calculating the direct emissions associated with the outputs of the process. It is particularly applicable for unique processes and individual product level analysis.

The advantages of process-based data include:

- High level of specificity and focus
- Detailed analysis and possibility of unique insights to particular processes
- Straightforward concept.

The disadvantages of process based data include:

- Collection of data may be time, cost, and labor intensive
- Lack of comparability as the system boundary and the data are selected by the practitioner
- Data requirements may render large-scale, multi-product analysis impractical.

Process-based data are emissions factors that include all direct emissions associated with the outputs of a specific process. This data is calculated using a "bottom-up" approach and provides a higher level of precision than EEIO data, although it is still secondary data and often less precise than primary data.

5.5.2.3 Proxy data

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 7

7.5 Guidance for collecting secondary data and filling data gaps

Using proxy data to fill data gaps

Companies should use the guidance in section 7.3 to assess the quality of available data. If data of sufficient quality are not available, companies may use proxy data to fill data gaps. Proxy data is data from a similar activity that is used as a stand-in for the given activity. Proxy data can be extrapolated, scaled up, or customized to be more representative of the given activity (e.g., partial data for an activity that is extrapolated or scaled up to represent 100 percent of the activity).

Examples of proxy data include:

- An emission factor exists for electricity in Ukraine, but not for Moldova. A company uses the electricity emission factor from Ukraine as a proxy for electricity in Moldova.
- A company collects data for 80 percent of its production for a given product category, but 20 percent is unknown. The company assumes the unknown 20 percent has similar characteristics to the known 80 percent so applies a linear extrapolation to estimate 100 percent of the production data.

Proxy data is data from a similar activity as the activity being quantified. The Scope 3 Standard allows the use of proxy data when other data is not available or is not of sufficient quality.

How we see it

Proxy data may be necessary when it is not possible to use other primary or secondary data. A reporting entity should justify that the proxy data used is a valid substitute for the data it was not able to obtain and internally document its rationale.

5.5.3 Priority of activities

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 7

7.1 Guidance for prioritizing data collection efforts

Companies should prioritize data collection efforts on the Scope 3 activities that are expected to have the most significant GHG emissions, offer the most significant GHG reduction opportunities, and are most relevant to the company's business goals. Collecting higher quality data for priority activities allows companies to focus resources on the most significant GHG emissions in the value chain, more effectively set reduction targets, and track and demonstrate GHG reductions over time (see chapter 9).

Companies may use a combination of approaches and criteria to identify priority activities. For example, companies may seek higher quality data for all activities that are significant in size, activities that present the most significant risks and opportunities in the value chain, and activities where more accurate data can be easily obtained. Companies may choose to rely on relatively less accurate data for activities that are expected to have insignificant emissions or where accurate data is difficult to obtain. ...

Prioritizing activities based on the magnitude of GHG emissions

The most rigorous approach to identifying priority activities is to use initial GHG estimation (or screening) methods to determine which Scope 3 activities are expected to be most significant in size. A quantitative approach gives the most accurate understanding of the relative magnitudes of various Scope 3 activities. To prioritize activities based on their expected GHG emissions, companies should:

- Use initial GHG estimation (or screening) methods to estimate the emissions from each Scope 3 activity (e.g., by using industry-average data, environmentally-extended input output data (see box 7.1), proxy data, or rough estimates); and
- Rank all Scope 3 activities from largest to smallest according to their estimated GHG emissions to determine which Scope 3 activities have the most significant impact.

Prioritizing activities based on financial spend or revenue

As an alternative to ranking Scope 3 activities based on their estimated GHG emissions, companies may choose to prioritize Scope 3 activities based on their relative financial significance. Companies may use a financial spend analysis to rank upstream types of purchased products by their contribution to the company's total spend or expenditure (for an example, see the AkzoNobel case study). For downstream emissions, companies may likewise rank types of sold products by their contribution to the company's total revenue.

Companies should use caution in prioritizing activities based on financial contribution, because spend and revenue may not correlate well with emissions. For example, some activities have a high market value, but have relatively low emissions. Conversely, some activities have a low market value, but have relatively high emissions. As a result, companies should also prioritize activities that do not contribute significantly to financial spend or revenue, but are expected to have a significant GHG impact.

Prioritizing activities based on other criteria

In addition to prioritizing data collection efforts on activities expected to contribute significantly to total Scope 3 emissions or to spend, companies may prioritize any other activities expected to be most relevant for the company or its stakeholders, including activities that:

- The company has influence over;
- Contribute to the company's risk exposure;
- Stakeholders deem critical;
- Have been identified as significant by sector-specific guidance; or
- Meet any additional criteria developed by the company or industry sector (see table 6.1 for more information).

Generally, a reporting entity should prioritize obtaining the highest quality data for activities that are expected to have the most significant GHG emissions, offer the most significant GHG reduction opportunities and are most relevant to the reporting entity's stated business goals. The Scope 3 Standard indicates that the significance of activities can determined based on the following:

- The magnitude of GHG emissions (the preferred method)
- Financial spend or revenue
- Other criteria based on activities expected to be most relevant for the entity or its stakeholders (refer to section 5.3.1 for the relevance criteria)

How we see it

The general GHG accounting and reporting principles of relevance and accuracy require that all material activities be included within a reporting entity's GHG inventory, with enough accuracy to enable users to make decisions with reasonable confidence as to the integrity of the reported information. The methods of determining the significance of activities discussed above cannot be used to justify the use of data that results in reporting that does not meet these general principles.

5.5.4 Data quality

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 7

7.3 Guidance for selecting data

Sources of primary data and secondary data can vary in quality. When selecting data sources, companies should use the data quality indicators in table 7.6 as a guide to obtaining the highest quality data available for a given emissions activity. The data quality indicators describe the representativeness of data (in terms of technology, time, and geography) and the quality of data measurements (i.e., completeness and reliability of data).

Companies should select data that are the most representative in terms of technology, time, and geography; most complete; and most reliable. Companies should determine the most useful method for applying the data quality indicators when selecting data and evaluating data quality.

The Scope 3 Standard provides criteria for determining the quality of data available for reporting Scope 3 data. These criteria are as follows (based on table 7.6 of the Scope 3 Standard):

- Technological representativeness: the degree to which the data reflects the actual technologies used
- Temporal representativeness: the degree to which the data represents the actual time (e.g., year) or age of the related activity
- Geographical representativeness: the degree to which the data reflects the actual geographic location of the activity (e.g., country or site)
- Completeness: the degree to which the data is statistically representative of the related activity (this criteria includes the percentage of locations for which data is available and used out of the total locations; and it also considers normal fluctuations in data, such as seasonality)
- Reliability: the degree to which the sources, data collection methods and verification procedures used to obtain data are dependable

The determination of data quality is subjective and judgment is required to perform this assessment. A reporting entity should consider the relative importance of the factors listed above to its reporting objectives when determining the quality of a given piece of data. The illustration below, which is based on Box 7.2 of the Scope 3 Standard, provides an example of a rating system that could be used to evaluate the quality of different sources.

Illustration 5-2: Evaluating data quality indicators

Company A is developing a rating system to determine the quality of data for direct emissions data, activity data and emissions factors used to calculate activities within its Scope 3 inventory. The rating system below will be customized for various data sets (e.g., as fuel emissions factors have not changed for many years, the buckets in the time criteria below may be widened to include longer ranges for the age of data). The rating system below will assist Company A when disclosing the data quality of its reported emissions data.

Score	Criteria				
	Technology	*Time*	*Geography*	*Completeness*	*Reliability*
Very good	Data generated using the same technology	Data less than three years old	Data from the same area	Data from all relevant sites	Verified data, based on measurements
Good	Data generated using a similar but different technology	Data less than five years old	Data from a similar area	Data from more than 75% of sites	Verified data, partly based on assumptions
Fair	Data generated using a different technology	Data less than 10 years old	Data from a different area	Data from more than 50% of sites	Non-verified data, partly based on assumptions
Poor	Data generated using an unknown technology	Data more than 10 years old or unknown age	Data from an unknown area	Data from less than 50% of sites	Data is an estimate

5.6 Calculating Scope 3 emissions

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Guidance

Overview of data types

Calculating emissions requires the use of two types of data: activity data and emission factors.

"Activity data" is a quantitative measure of a level of activity that results in GHG emissions (for example, liters of fuel consumed, or kilograms of material purchased). An "emission factor" is a factor that converts activity data into GHG emissions data (for example kg CO_2 emitted per liter of fuel consumed, or kg CO_2 emitted per kilograms of material produced). …

Material/product emission factors in Scope 3 accounting

Two types of emission factors can be used for calculating emissions associated with a material or product:

- **Life cycle emission factors**, which include emissions that occur at every stage of a material/product's life, from raw material acquisition or generation of natural resource to end of life
- **Cradle-to-gate (sometimes referred to as "upstream") emission factors**, which include all emissions that occur in the life cycle of a material/product up to the point of sale by the producer.

In general, cradle-to-gate emission factors should be used to calculate emissions associated with goods or services (e.g. category 1 (Purchased goods and services) and category 2 (Capital goods)).

Energy emission factors in Scope 3 accounting

Two types of emission factors are used to convert energy activity data into emissions data:

- **Life cycle emission factors**, which include not only the emissions that occur from combusting the fuel, but all other emissions that occur in the life cycle of the fuel such as emissions from extraction, processing, and transportation
- **Combustion emission factors**, which include only the emissions that occur from combusting the fuel.

Companies should use life cycle emission factors to calculate *Scope 3* emissions related to fuels and energy consumed in the reporting company's value chain, except for category 3 (Fuel- and energy-related activities not included in *Scope 1* or *Scope 2*). Combustion emission factors are used to calculate *Scope 1* emissions (in the case of fuels) and *Scope 2* emissions (in the case of electricity).

Two activities within Scope 3 category 3 require special consideration when selecting emission factors:

- **Upstream emissions of purchased fuels** (*i.e.,* extraction, production, and transportation of fuels consumed by the reporting company)
- **Upstream emissions of purchased electricity** (*i.e.,* extraction, production, and transportation of fuels consumed in the generation of electricity, steam, heating, and cooling that is consumed by the reporting company).

To calculate emissions from these two activities, companies should use emission factors that include upstream emissions (*i.e.,* extraction, production, and transportation) but exclude emissions from combustion, since emissions from combustion are accounted for in *Scope 1* (in the case of fuels), in *Scope 2* (in the case of electricity), and in a separate memo item (in the case of direct CO_2 emissions from combustion of biomass or biofuels).

Scope 3 emissions are often calculated using activity data and emissions factors that convert that activity data into GHG emissions, similar to Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions. Sections 5.7 and 5.8 describe the various calculation methods that may be used for each Scope 3 category.

All emissions factors used in Scope 3 calculations should be evaluated to understand what is included and captured by the emissions factor (e.g., whether they are life-cycle emissions factors or cradle-to-gate emissions factors). This will help prevent inadvertent double counting across categories. Careful consideration should also be given to the units of each emissions factor used and if those units are appropriate compared to the units of activity data used, or if they require conversion. Refer to section 3.3.2.1 for more detail about the various types of emissions factors.

Calculating upstream Scope 3 emissions for Category 1, *Purchased goods and services*, and Category 2, *Capital goods*, requires the use of specific emissions factors to avoid double counting with Scope 1 emissions or other Scope 3 categories. These Scope 3 emissions should be calculated using upstream emissions factors, which are also referred to as "cradle-to-gate" emissions factors. Cradle-to-gate emissions factors include all emissions that occur in the lifecycle of a material/product up to the point of sale by the producer. The use of unadjusted lifecycle emissions factors, which include all emissions generated in the entire lifecycle of a product, is not appropriate for calculating upstream emissions as it will result in double counting emissions reported as Scope 1, Scope 2 or other Scope 3 categories. The various phases of a lifecycle emission factor (e.g., raw material extraction, manufacturing and processing, transportation, usage, disposal) must be considered when determining the appropriate portion of a lifecycle emission factor to use.

Similarly, when calculating Category 3, *Fuel- and energy-related activities* (not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2), a reporting entity should use emissions factors that include all emissions related to the extraction, production and transportation of fuels consumed by the reporting entity or fuels used to produce electricity, but not the emissions related to combustion, since these are accounted for in Scope 1 or Scope 2 emissions.

5.6.1 Quality of emissions factors

A reporting entity should assess the quality of emissions factors used in calculating Scope 3 emissions for appropriateness and reliability. Questions to consider when making this assessment may include:

- Who issued the emissions factors? Are they a reputable organization? Do they have the appropriate expertise to issue emissions factors?
- What is the underlying data for the emissions factors and calculation methodology used? Is the underlying data credible and supported?
- What years do they represent? Are there any lags? How often are they updated?
- What is the boundary for the emissions factors? Are they geographical/industry-specific?
- What are the units of the emissions factors? Which GWP are incorporated?
- Is the nature of the emissions factor appropriate given the activity data being used (e.g., fuels can have both stationary and mobile combustion emissions factors, so the correct factor should be selected)?
- Are there any adjustments made to the emissions factors (e.g., inflation for spend-based factors, adjustments for various phases of a life-cycle emission factor)?

Not all of the considerations above are relevant for each type of emissions factor.

A reporting entity should pay particular attention to the units of measure for third-party emissions factors used to calculate Scope 3 emissions, as the appropriate unit of measure depends on the unit of measure of the activity data and the calculation method. An understanding of the units of measure of the emissions factors and any necessary conversion is critical to calculating accurate Scope 3 emissions.

5.7 Upstream categories

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Glossary

Upstream emissions: Indirect GHG emissions from purchased or acquired goods and services.

Upstream emissions categories generally include all Scope 3 emissions (within the defined minimum boundary) generated before the reporting entity purchases or acquires the related goods or services that enable company operations. Certain exceptions to this general rule apply, as described in the sections below.

5.7.1 Category 1: Purchased goods and services (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

5.5 Description of Scope 3 categories

Category 1: Purchased goods and services

This category includes all upstream (i.e., cradle-to-gate) emissions from the production of products purchased or acquired by the reporting company in the reporting year. Products include both goods (tangible products) and services (intangible products).

This category includes emissions from all purchased goods and services not otherwise included in the other categories of upstream Scope 3 emissions (i.e., category 2 through category 8). Specific categories of upstream emissions are separately reported in category 2 through category 8 to enhance the transparency and consistency of Scope 3 reports.

Cradle-to-gate emissions include all emissions that occur in the life cycle of purchased products, up to the point of receipt by the reporting company (excluding emissions from sources that are owned or controlled by the reporting company). Cradle-to-gate emissions may include:

- Extraction of raw materials
- Agricultural activities
- Manufacturing, production, and processing
- Generation of electricity consumed by upstream activities
- Disposal/treatment of waste generated by upstream activities
- Land use and land-use change[5]
- Transportation of materials and products between suppliers
- Any other activities prior to acquisition by the reporting company

Emissions from the use of products purchased by the reporting company are accounted for in either Scope 1 (e.g., for fuel use) or Scope 2 (e.g., for electricity use), rather than Scope 3.

[5] For more information on land use and land-use change, refer to Appendix B of the GHG Protocol Product Standard.

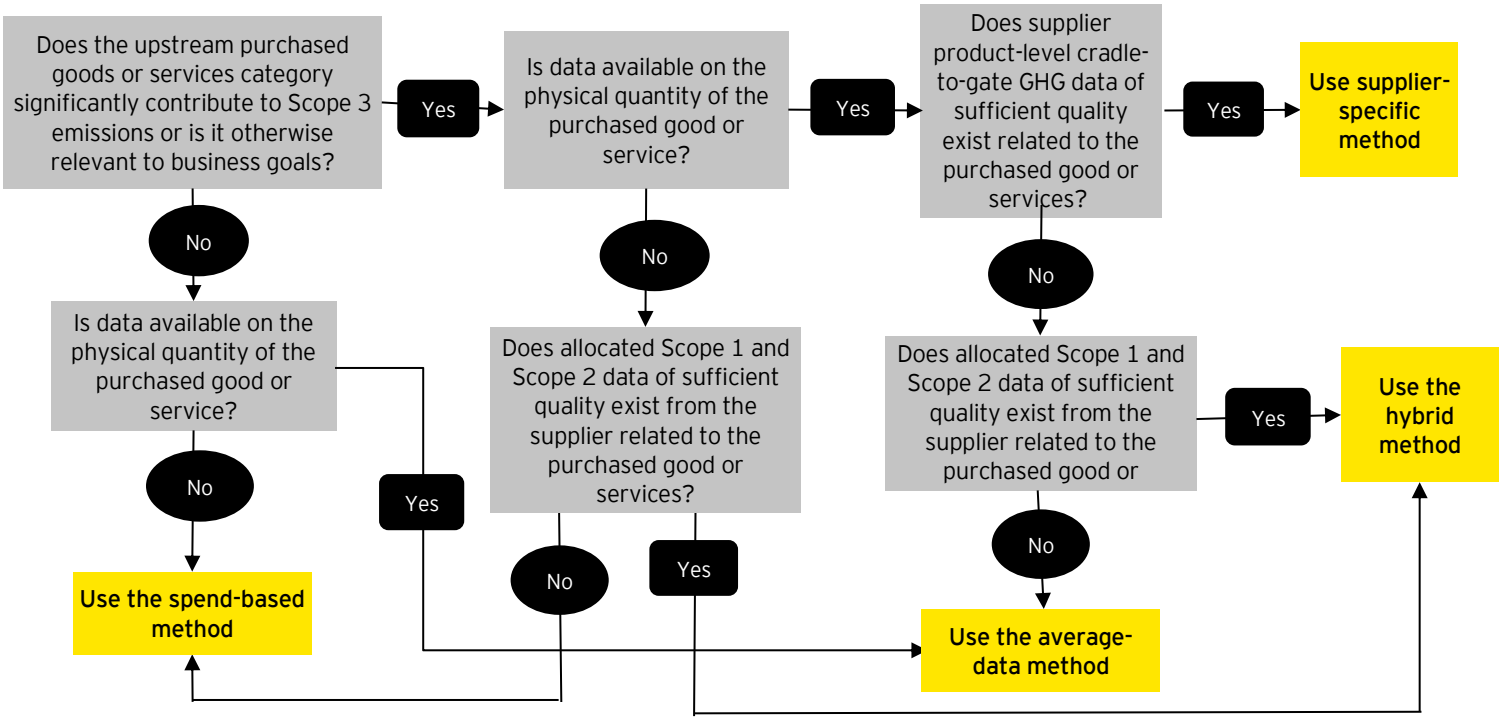
Category 1, *Purchased goods and services*, emissions include all upstream emissions from purchased goods and services not included in the specific upstream categories described in sections 5.7.2–5.7.8 below. The minimum boundary of category 1 includes all cradle-to-gate emissions of purchased goods and services. Refer to section 3.3.2.1 for more information related to cradle-to-gate emissions.

How we see it

Entities should appropriately categorize their upstream emissions in the relevant Scope 3 category to apply the associated guidance and disclosure requirements. However, if data limitations prevent the ability to allocate emissions of certain activities, those emissions may be included in category 1 since it encompasses all upstream emissions not specifically accounted for in categories 2 through 8. For example, if transportation and distribution activities paid for by the entity are included in the emissions factors used to calculate category 1 emissions and the emissions from those activities cannot reasonably be allocated, we believe it would be acceptable to include those emissions in category 1. Refer to section 5.7.1.5 for discussion on allocating transportation emissions.

Category 1 emissions may be calculated using the methods described in sections 5.7.1.1–5.7.1.4. A reporting entity may use different calculation methods for different types of purchased goods and services within category 1. The calculation methods below are listed from most to least precise. The Scope 3 Standard specifies that a reporting entity is not required to use the most specific calculation method. Instead, a reporting entity can prioritize and use a mix of calculation methods based on the availability and quality of data. See section 5.4 for a discussion of selecting calculation methods and section 5.5.4 for a discussion of the impact of the quality of the data on the selected calculation method.

The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 1.2 of the Scope 3 Guidance, indicates which calculation method a reporting entity should select when calculating upstream purchased goods and services.



This flowchart should be applied in connection with guidance on selecting calculation methods (section 5.4) and data quality (section 5.5.4).

5.7.1.1 Supplier-specific method (updated June 2025)

Supplier-specific method	
This method uses product-level cradle-to-gate GHG inventory data from suppliers for specific goods or services. Supplier-specific emissions from purchased goods and services are calculated as the sum of all supplier-specific activity data multiplied by supplier-specific emissions factors.	
Activity data used	**Emissions factor used**
▸ Quantities or units of goods or services purchased	▸ Supplier-specific cradle-to-gate emissions factors for the purchased goods or services

The Scope 3 Guidance highlights that supplier-specific product-level data is the most accurate because it relates to the specific good or service purchased by the reporting entity and avoids the need for allocation, which can introduce additional uncertainty to a calculation. A reporting entity should prioritize the use of supplier-specific activity data that is verified by a third party, which may be obtained from questionnaires sent to the supplier. A reporting entity should also prioritize the use of emissions factor data from the same time interval as the Scope 3 inventory when using this method, as well as the other indicators of the quality of an emissions factor discussed in section 5.6.1.

While supplier-specific product-level data is the most specific, Table [7.7] of the Scope 3 Standard provides a listing of levels of data in order of specificity, noting that the most specific data may not always be available and less specific supplier data may need to be used.

Table [7.7] Levels of data (ranked in order of specificity)	
Data type	**Description**
Product-level data	Cradle-to-gate GHG emissions for the product of interest
Activity-, process- or production line-level data	GHG emissions and/or activity data for the activities, processes or production lines that produce the product of interest
Facility-level data	GHG emissions and/or activity data for the facilities or operations that produce the product of interest
Business unit-level data	GHG emissions and/or activity data for the business units that produce the product of interest
Corporate-level data	GHG emissions and/or activity data for the entire corporation

When a reporting entity uses less specific supplier-specific data, it must consider the data quality indicators as discussed in section 5.5.4.

When evaluating completeness in the context of category 1 emissions, a reporting entity should consider whether the reported emissions data from a supplier includes all of the expected operations (e.g., geographies, business units), as well as all of the various emissions sources (i.e., cradle-to-gate, which includes Scope 1, Scope 2 and upstream Scope 3).

Regarding reliability, Box 7.4, Level of data and supplier type from the GHG Protocol Scope 3 Standard references assessing the diversity of the supplier from which data is obtained. That is because a homogenous supplier produces similar products throughout its operations, whereas a diversified supplier has varying products and operations throughout its operations. The Scope 3 Standard states that a reporting entity "needs to decide whether collecting corporate-level emissions from the suppliers will accurately reflect emissions related to the purchased product." This assessment may be done on a qualitatively based on the nature of each supplier.

Regardless of the level of supplier-specific data that is obtained, the reporting entity should recognize that it is responsible for the completeness and accuracy of its Scope 3 inventory, including the quality of third-party data it incorporates in its calculations.

As noted in Section 5.9, allocation should be avoided when possible due to the level of uncertainty it introduces into a calculation. However, allocation will often be necessary when less specific supplier data is available. Emissions allocation for Scope 3, category 1 and 2, emissions requires two inputs: (1) the relevant supplier GHG emissions data (i.e., Scope 1, Scope 2 and upstream Scope 3 GHG emissions) and (2) the reporting entity's share of the supplier's production, which can be based on economic factors such as revenue and spend or units produced. Depending on the allocation methods used, allocated supplier specific data may be less specific than industry average data, so a reporting entity should carefully consider what data it should use in its calculations.

The reporting entity chooses the category 1 method based on the most specific information that is available for a particular supplier. Therefore, reporting entities may use multiple methods in their calculation of category 1 emissions.

5.7.1.2 Hybrid method

Hybrid method	
This method uses a combination of supplier-specific activity data (when available) and secondary data (when supplier-specific data is not used). This method involves: ▸ Collecting as much supplier-specific activity data (i.e., allocated Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions data related to purchased goods and services directly from suppliers) and supplier-specific emissions factors as is available ▸ Collecting secondary data whenever supplier-specific activity data and/or emissions factors is not available to fill any gaps ▸ Calculating upstream emissions of purchased goods and services using the combination of supplier-specific activity data (including extrapolated data), supplier-specific emissions factors and secondary data	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
Supplier-specific activity data (when available) ▸ Allocated Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions data directly from suppliers related to purchased goods and services directly ▸ Mass or volume of material inputs, mass or volume of fuel inputs used and distance from the origin of the raw material inputs to the supplier ▸ Quantities of waste output ▸ Mass or number of units of purchased goods or services (e.g., kg, m^3, hours spent) ▸ Amount spent on purchased goods or services, by product type, using market values	*Supplier specific emissions factors (when available)* ▸ Cradle-to-gate emissions factors for materials used by Tier 1 supplier to produce purchased goods ▸ Lifecycle emissions factors for fuel used by incoming transportation of input materials to Tier 1 supplier ▸ Emissions factors for waste outputs by Tier 1 suppliers to produce purchased goods ▸ Other emissions factors as applicable *Secondary emissions factors* ▸ Cradle-to-gate emissions factors of the purchased goods or services per unit of mass or unit of product (e.g., kg CO_2e/kg or kg CO_2e/hours spent) ▸ Cradle-to-gate emissions factors of the purchased goods or services per unit of economic value (e.g., kg CO_2e/$)

A reporting entity should use as much supplier-specific information as is available when applying the hybrid method to calculate Scope 3 emissions. Where possible, the data from the supplier should be for the same time interval as the reporting entity's Scope 3 inventory. The Scope 3 Guidance also indicates that when it is "not feasible" for a reporting entity to collect data from all suppliers for all purchased goods, extrapolation and sampling techniques may be used to estimate this data (see section 5.10 for guidance on sampling). A reporting entity will need to use judgment to determine when it is not feasible to obtain supplier-specific activity data that may potentially be available. However, this judgment must remain consistent with the GHG accounting and reporting principles discussed in section 1.4, particularly the principles of completeness, transparency and accuracy.

A reporting entity should obtain disaggregated secondary emissions factors so the relevant elements can be overwritten with supplier-specific data to combine the primary data collected from the supplier with secondary data to fill the gaps. The activity data may be obtained from the supplier's internal data systems or from public GHG inventory reports. Data sources for emissions factors include lifecycle databases, industry associations and government agencies.

5.7.1.3 Average-data method

Average-data method	
This method estimates emissions for goods and services by using data from a relevant measurement of goods or services purchased and multiplying that data by the relevant secondary (e.g., industry average) emissions factors.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Mass or number of units of purchased goods or services for a given year (e.g., kg, hours spent)	▸ Cradle-to-gate emissions factors of the purchased goods or services per unit of mass or unit of product (e.g., kg CO_2e/kg or kg CO_2e/hour spent)

The emissions factors used in the average-data method should be assessed to make sure they are of appropriate quality to be used in the calculation of purchased goods and materials. See section 5.6.1 for discussion of the relevant factors to consider when assessing the quality of emissions factors, as well as section 5.5.4 for a general discussion of data quality. Activity data may be obtained from purchasing records, while emissions factors may be obtained from process lifecycle databases and industry associations.

5.7.1.4 Spend-based method

Spend-based method	
This method estimates emissions for goods and services by collecting data on the economic value of goods and services purchased and multiplying it by relevant secondary (e.g., industry average) emissions factors (e.g., average emissions per monetary value of goods purchased).	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Amount spent on purchased goods or services, by product type, using market values (e.g., dollars) ▸ Where applicable, inflation data to convert market values between the year of the EEIO emissions factors and the year of the activity data	▸ Cradle-to-gate emissions factors of the purchased goods or services per unit of economic value (e.g., kg CO_2e/$)

The spend-based method is the least precise calculation method for the category and uses EEIO emissions factors, which are discussed further in section 5.5.2.1.

Activity data may be obtained from a bill of materials or purchasing records, while emissions factors may be obtained from EEIO database and industry associations. Depending on when the EEIO emissions factor was calculated, a reporting entity may also need to obtain inflation data to convert market values from the year the EEIO emissions factor was published to the year of the activity data (as EEIO emissions factors measure emissions compared to revenue, inflation would cause an artificial increase in the total emissions calculated if the emissions factor was not adjusted).

5.7.1.5 Consideration of transportation within category 1 emissions (added July 2025)

The categorization of transportation costs depends on whether the supplier or the reporting company is responsible for the costs.

If the supplier pays for the transportation, the reporting entity takes receipt of the goods at the destination point (e.g., its facility or warehouse), so emissions generated during the transportation of the goods are embedded in the cost and captured in Scope 3, category 1.

Conversely, if the reporting entity pays for the transportation, the reporting entity receives the goods at the shipping point (e.g., the supplier's facility), so emissions generated during the transportation of the goods are included in Category 4, *Upstream transportation and distribution* (assuming the transportation

is done in vehicles not owned/controlled by the reporting entity). The Scope 3 Standard refers to this transportation as between tier 1 suppliers and the reporting entity (see section 5.5.1 for the definition of a tier 1 supplier).

There also may be transportation between upstream suppliers prior to receipt by the direct supplier of the reporting entity, which often is the case when a reporting entity procures finished products. The Scope 3 Standard refers to this as transportation between tier 2 and tier 1 suppliers (see section 5.5.1 for the definition of a tier 2 supplier). The emissions from this transportation are included in Scope 3, category 1.

The following graphic, which is based on Figure 9.1 in the Scope 3 Guidance, illustrates the classification of transportation between Scope 3 categories.

	1 Transportation between upstream suppliers (i.e., tier 1 and tier 2 suppliers)	2 Transportation between reporting entity and direct supplier (i.e., reporting entity and tier 1 supplier)	3 Transportation between the customer or a third-party retailer and reporting entity
Paid for by reporting entity	N/A	Category 4: Upstream Transportation and Distribution	Category 4: Upstream Transportation and Distribution
Paid for by third-party	Category 1: Purchased goods and services	Category 1: Purchased goods and services	Category 9: Downstream Transportation and Distribution

Illustration 5-3: Classification of emissions from transporation between Categories 1, 4 and 9

The reporting entity, a toy store, purchases plastic action figures to sell directly to consumers.

- Transportation of plastic parts between the plastic manufacturing company and the toy manufacturing company is captured in Scope 3, category 1.
- Transportation of the plastic action figure between the toy manufacturing company and the toy store depends on who pays for the transportation.
  - If the shipping costs are bundled into the cost of the action figure, transportation is assumed to be paid for by the toy manufacturer and is captured in Scope 3, category 1.
  - If the shipping costs are separate from the cost of the action figure, transportation is assumed to be paid for by the toy store and is captured in Scope 3, category 4.
- Transportation of the plastic action figure between the toy store and the consumer, who either purchases it online or requests delivery directly to the consumer's home depends on who pays for the transportation.
  - If the shipping costs are bundled into the cost of the action figure, transportation is paid for by the toy store and captured in Scope 3, category 4.
  - If the shipping costs are separate from the cost of the action figure, transportation is paid for by the consumer and captured in Scope 3, category 9.
- Transportation of the plastic action figure between the toy store and the consumer that purchases it at a physical storefront (i.e., the consumer driving to and from the physical storefront) may be reported optionally in Scope 3, category 9.

There may be instances where the reporting entity pays for the transportation of the purchased good, but its activity data does not include the disaggregation of transportation costs from the cost of the purchased good (i.e., while shipping and handling is listed separately on the invoice, it is not listed separately within the activity data). Since the reporting entity pays for the transportation, the emissions associated with it are category 4 emissions. However, due to the lack of detail in the activity data, the reporting entity needs to estimate what percentage of the spend on the goods is attributable to the purchase price (i.e., category 1 activity data) and what percentage of the spend on the goods is attributable to the transportation (i.e., category 4 activity data) to calculate its emissions. Any significant assumptions used are required to be disclosed. Alternatively, we believe the reporting entity may account for the transportation emissions in category 1 because the Scope 3 Standard states that category 1 "includes emissions from all purchased goods and services not otherwise included in other categories of upstream [S]cope 3 emissions." If this approach is taken, a company should evaluate the impact and, if significant, disclose that classification.

A reporting entity should evaluate the underlying data and assumptions used in the emissions factor selected to calculate its category 1 emissions to avoid double counting between category 1 and the other Scope 3 categories. In the case of the EPA's supply chain emissions factors, the reporting entity should evaluate if the supply chain factors "with margins" or "without margins" are most appropriate based on the reporting entity's position within the value chain. The EPA defines margins as the emissions from "transportation, wholesale and retail as well as adjustments for price markup." Reporting entities positioned near the beginning of the value chain, particularly those purchasing raw materials, will likely find the supply chain emissions factors without margins to be most appropriate. In contrast, reporting entities positioned farther down the value chain, particularly end users of products, will likely find the supply chain emissions factors with margins to be most appropriate.

Illustration 5-4: Use of margins in EPA supply chain emissions factors

An orange juice manufacturer, the reporting entity, procures goods required to produce and sell fresh orange juice.

- **Oranges** are purchased direct from Florida orange groves. The orange juice manufacturer pays for the transportation of the oranges in third-party trucks.
  - The reporting entity applies the EPA's supply chain emissions factor without margins to the cost of oranges for purposes of its Scope 3, category 1 calculation. That is because there is no transportation before (upstream) the transportation between the orange grove (i.e., direct supplier) and the reporting entity, and there is little price markup because the transaction occurs early in the value chain.
  - The emissions associated with the transportation between the orange groves and the reporting entity are captured in Scope 3, category 4, because the orange juice manufacturer paid for the third-party transportation of the oranges.
- A **fully automatic commercial juicer** is purchased from a retailer. The cost of shipping is bundled into the cost of the commercial juicer.
  - The reporting entity applies the EPA's supply chain emissions factor with margins to the cost of the commercial juicer for purposes of its Scope 3, category 1 calculation. That is because there is likely additional transportation upstream from the transportation between the retailer and the reporting entity, and there is also likely a price markup on the juicer because the orange juice manufacturer is the end user of the purchased good.
  - The emissions associated with the transportation of the juicer between the retailer and the reporting entity are captured in Scope 3, category 1, because the retailer paid for the transportation of the juicer.

- A **filling and capping machine** is purchased from a retailer. The orange juice manufacturer pays separately for the transportation of the filling and capping machine from the retailer to the reporting entity.
  - The reporting entity applies the EPA's supply chain emissions factor with margins to the cost of the filling and capping machine for purposes of its Scope 3, category 1 calculation. That is because there is likely additional transportation upstream from the transportation between the retailer and the reporting entity and there is likely a price markup because the orange juice manufacturer is the end user of the purchased good.
  - The emissions associated with the transportation of the filling and capping machine between the retailer and the reporting entity are captured in Scope 3, category 4, because the reporting entity paid for the transportation of the filling and capping machine.

5.7.2 Category 2: Capital goods (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 5.5

Category 2: Capital goods

This category includes all upstream (i.e., cradle-to-gate) emissions from the production of capital goods purchased or acquired by the reporting company in the reporting year. Emissions from the use of capital goods by the reporting company are accounted for in either Scope 1 (e.g., for fuel use) or Scope 2 (e.g., for electricity use), rather than Scope 3.

Capital goods are final products that have an extended life and are used by the company to manufacture a product, provide a service, or sell, store, and deliver merchandise. In financial accounting, capital goods are treated as fixed assets or as plant, property, and equipment (PP&E). Examples of capital goods include equipment, machinery, buildings, facilities, and vehicles.

In certain cases, there may be ambiguity over whether a particular purchased product is a capital good (to be reported in category 2) or a purchased good (to be reported in category 1). Companies should follow their own financial accounting procedures to determine whether to account for a purchased product as a capital good in this category or as a purchased good or service in category 1. Companies should not double count emissions between category 1 and category 2.

Category 2, *Capital goods*, emissions relate to upstream purchased capital goods and the minimum boundary includes all "cradle-to-gate" emissions from the production of capital goods that are acquired by the reporting entity during the year (i.e., the production emissions are included in the year the capital good is acquired and are not spread over the useful life of the capital good). Furthermore, GHGs emitted while using capital goods are included in Scope 1 or Scope 2 emissions. The Scope 3 Standard specifies that a reporting entity should differentiate between Category 1, *Purchased goods and services*, and Category 2, *Capital goods*, based on its financial accounting policy. Emissions from the production of items that are classified as fixed assets or property, plant, and equipment for financial accounting purposes should be included in this category. There should not be any double counting between category 1 and category 2. Scope 3 emissions from category 2 are reported in the year the related asset is acquired, which can lead to significant fluctuations in the emissions from this category year over year.

The calculation methods for calculating emissions from category 2 are the same as the methods for calculating emissions from category 1: the supplier-specific method (section 5.7.1.1), the hybrid method (section 5.7.1.2), the average-data method (section 5.7.1.3, also called the average-product method in

the context of category 2 emission reporting) and the spend-based method (section 5.7.1.4). When using the spend-based method, it is important to remember that the activity data used should represent the entire market value of the purchased good, not the amount of cash that was paid during that period. For example, a reporting entity purchases a building during the reporting period by making a 20% down payment and securing a 10-year mortgage for the remaining amount. The reporting entity would include all "cradle-to-gate" emissions from the production of the building during the reporting period (i.e., the year it was acquired). It would not account for 20% of the emissions in the reporting period and spread the remaining 80% over the next 10 years. The reporting entity would not report any emissions from the production of the building during the 10-year mortgage period as all emissions had been accounted for in the year of acquisition.

How we see it

The GHG Protocol states that Scope 3 category 2 emissions include emissions from the production of capital goods purchased or acquired by the reporting company in the reporting year. We believe this implies that the emissions from any capital good that was obtained by the entity during the year (whether it was paid for or not) should be included in Scope 3 category 2 emissions. Furthermore, the GHG Protocol specifies that Scope 3 category 2 emissions may fluctuate significantly year-over-year based on the timing of capital purchases.

When applying the spend-based method, a reporting entity should evaluate whether it is using cash-basis (e.g., procurement data based on payments made) or accrual-basis activity data, given the category 2 time boundary, which requires recognition of total cradle-to-gate emissions from purchased capital goods in the year of acquisition. In some cases, the difference between using cash-basis and accrual-basis activity data may not be material. However, in circumstances where long-term debt financing is involved (e.g., a mortgage), the difference is likely to be material, so a reporting entity should use accrual-basis activity data to reflect the emissions from the capital good in the acquisition year, as required.

5.7.3 Category 3: Fuel- and energy-related activities (FERA) (not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2) (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 5.5

Category 3: Fuel- and energy-related emissions not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2

This category includes emissions related to the production of fuels and energy purchased and consumed by the reporting company in the reporting year that are not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2.

Category 3 excludes emissions from the combustion of fuels or electricity consumed by the reporting company, since they are already included in Scope 1 or Scope 2.

Category 3, *Fuel- and energy- related activities*, emissions are related to the production of fuels, including fuels used to produce energy, that are purchased and consumed by the reporting entity. This category excludes emissions related to the combustion of those fuels (as these emissions are reported in either Scope 1 or Scope 2, depending on where the combustion occurs). An entity is permitted to use either the LBM or MBM for calculating Scope 3 category 3 emissions and should disclose which method is used. Specific to transmission and distribution (T&D) losses, reporting entities, their suppliers or other value chain partners may purchase EACs to cover the quantity of grid losses and report category 3

emissions based on the MBM. Refer to section 4 for more guidance regarding the LBM and MBM and section 5.11 for more guidance regarding Scope 3 disclosures. The following table, which is based on table 5.5 of the Scope 3 Standard, describes the four activities that generate emissions included in Scope 3, category 3.

Activity	Emissions description	Examples	Who would report these Scope 3 category 3 emissions	Minimum boundary
Upstream emissions of purchased fuels	Emissions related to the extraction, production and transportation of fuels consumed by the reporting entity	Emissions from mining coal and refining gasoline Emissions from transmission and distribution of natural gas Emissions from production of biofuels	End users of fuels	All upstream (cradle-to-gate) emissions of purchased fuels (from raw material extraction up to the point of, but excluding, combustion)
Upstream emissions of purchased electricity	Emissions related to the extraction, production and transportation of fuels consumed in the generation of electricity, steam, heating and cooling that is consumed by the reporting entity	Emissions from mining coal, refining fuels and extraction of natural gas used to generate electricity	End users of electricity, steam, heating and cooling	All upstream (cradle-to-gate) emissions of purchased fuels (from raw material extraction up to the point of, but excluding, combustion by a power generator)
T&D losses	Emissions related to the generation of electricity, steam, heating and cooling that is consumed (i.e., lost) in a T&D system that is reported by the end user of the energy	See section 4.2.5	End users of electricity, steam, heating and cooling	All upstream (cradle-to-gate) emissions of energy consumed in a T&D system, including emissions from combustion
Generation of purchased electricity that is sold to end users	Emissions related to the generation of electricity, steam, heating and cooling that is purchased by the reporting entity and sold to end users	See section 4.2.5	Utility companies and energy retailers	Emissions from the generation of purchased energy

Consistent with the Scope 2 definition, an electric utility (the reporting entity) transmitting and distributing electricity acquired or generated from third parties accounts for the emissions from the energy lost during the T&D process as Scope 2 emissions if the T&D system is within the reporting entity's inventory boundary. However, those T&D losses are included in category 3 of Scope 3 emissions of the purchaser of that electricity.

Emissions from category 3 should be calculated using either the supplier-specific method or average-data method. See section 5.7.1.1 for a description of the supplier-specific calculation method and section 5.7.1.3 for a description of the average-data method. The nature of the activity data and emissions factors required varies for each of the four activities and based on the calculation method selected, as described in the chart below:

Activity	Activity data	Emissions factors	
		Supplier-specific method	Average-data method
Upstream emissions of purchased fuels	Quantities and types of fuel consumed	Fuel-provider-specific emissions factors that include extraction, production and transportation (but exclude combustion) of fuels per unit of purchased fuel (e.g., kg CO_2e/gallon), by fuel type and country/region	Average emissions factors for upstream emissions per unit of purchased fuel (e.g., kg CO_2e/gallon) that exclude emissions from combustion (e.g., lifecycle emissions factor less combustion emissions factor)
Upstream emissions of purchased electricity	Total quantities of electricity, steam, heating and cooling purchased and consumed per unit of consumption (e.g., kWh), broken down by supplier, grid region or country	Utility-specific emissions factors for extraction, production and transportation of fuels consumed per unit of consumption of electricity, steam, heating or cooling generated	Grid-region, country or regional emissions factors for extraction, production and transportation of fuels per unit of consumption (e.g., kg CO_2e/kWh) of electricity, steam, heating or cooling generated
T&D losses	Electricity, steam, heating and cooling per unit of consumption (e.g., kWh), broken down by grid region or country	Utility-specific T&D loss rate percentage, specific to the grid where energy is generated and consumed Utility-specific lifecycle emissions factors (i.e., extraction, production, transportation and consumption) for the energy consumed	Country, region or global average T&D loss rate percentage Country or region lifecycle emissions factors (i.e., extraction, production, transportation and consumption) for the energy consumed
Generation of purchased electricity that is sold to end users	Quantity of electricity purchased and sold and the generation facility upstream emissions data (e.g., Scope 1 and Scope 2 of generation facility)	Generator-specific emissions factors per unit of electricity produced	Grid average emission factors for the origin of purchased energy per unit of electricity produced

5.7.3.1 Emissions factors used in calculation of upstream emission of purchased fuels and electricity

A reporting entity should make sure it uses an appropriate emissions factor for calculating category 3 emissions. The Scope 3 Guidance encourages the use of high-quality and publicly available emissions factors when calculating upstream emissions of purchased fuels, and it includes links to a number of third-party databases on its website.

Similarly, a reporting entity should make sure that the emissions factors used to calculate upstream emissions of purchased electricity do not include emissions from combustion (and T&D losses if they are separately calculated) to avoid double counting. That is because emissions from combustion to generate electricity are included in Scope 2 emissions. The Scope 3 Guidance encourages the use of transparent, disaggregated fuel and electricity emissions factors that allow for separate accounting of emissions from combustion of fuel in electricity generation in Scope 2 and non-generation activities related to electricity in Scope 3.

5.7.4 Category 4: Upstream transportation and distribution (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 5.5

Category 4: Upstream transportation and distribution

This category includes emissions from the transportation and distribution of products (excluding fuel and energy products) purchased or acquired by the reporting company in the reporting year in vehicles and facilities not owned or operated by the reporting company, as well as other transportation and distribution services purchased by the reporting company in the reporting year (including both inbound and outbound logistics).

Specifically, this category includes:

- Transportation and distribution of products purchased by the reporting company in the reporting year, between a company's tier 1 suppliers[6] and its own operations (including multi-modal shipping where multiple carriers are involved in the delivery of a product)
- Third-party transportation and distribution services purchased by the reporting company in the reporting year (either directly or through an intermediary), including inbound logistics, outbound logistics (e.g., of sold products), and third-party transportation and distribution between a company's own facilities

Emissions may arise from the following transportation and distribution activities throughout the value chain:

- Air transport
- Rail transport
- Road transport
- Marine transport
- Storage of purchased products in warehouses, distribution centers, and retail facilities

Outbound logistics services purchased by the reporting company are categorized as upstream because they are a purchased service. Emissions from transportation and distribution of purchased products upstream of the reporting company's tier 1 suppliers (e.g., transportation between a company's tier 2 and tier 1 suppliers) are accounted for in Scope 3, category 1 (Purchased goods and services). Table 5.7 explains the scope and Scope 3 category where each type of transportation and distribution activity should be accounted for.

A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from upstream transportation and distribution include the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of third-party transportation companies.

[6] Tier 1 suppliers are companies with which the reporting company has a purchase order for goods or services (e.g., materials, parts, components, etc.). Tier 2 suppliers are companies with which Tier 1 suppliers have a purchase order for goods and services

Category 4, *Upstream transportation and distribution*, emissions generally are from the transportation and distribution of products purchased or acquired by the reporting entity from Tier 1 suppliers in the reporting year. These emissions are generated by vehicles not owned or controlled by the reporting entity (emissions from vehicles owned or controlled by the reporting entity are reported as Scope 1 emissions). This category also includes emissions from all other transportation and distribution services purchased by the reporting entity in the reporting year, including inbound logistics, outbound logistics and transportation between a reporting entity's facilities. That is, the minimum boundary for category 4 emissions are the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of transportation and distribution providers that occur

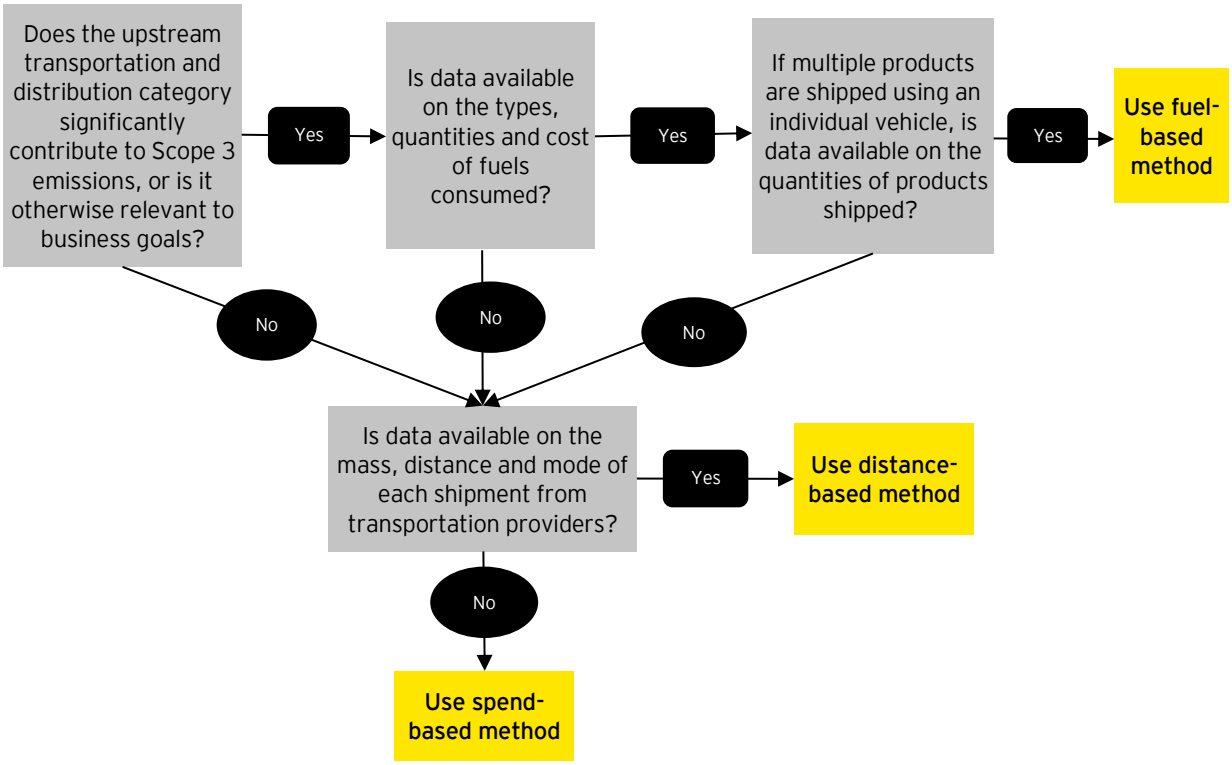
during their use of vehicles and facilities (e.g., from energy use). The Scope 3 Standard clarifies that purchased outbound logistics (i.e., transportation of sold products) are included in this category because these services are purchased and, therefore, are considered an upstream activity and not included in Category 9, *Downstream transportation and distribution*. Emissions from warehouses, distribution centers and retail facilities (not owned or controlled by the reporting entity) that are used to store purchased products are also included in this category.

Transportation of fuel and energy products are excluded from this category, and are instead included in Category 3, *Fuel- and energy-related activities*. Additionally, any emissions related to the transportation and distribution of raw materials or products before reaching Tier 1 suppliers, such as shipments of partially processed raw material from a Tier 3 supplier to a Tier 2 supplier, are included within Category 1, *Purchased goods and services*. See section 5.7.1.5 for further discussion on the classification of transportation between Scope 3 categories.

Emissions from the return journey of the empty vehicles used to transport the products are considered an optional activity and are not included in the minimum boundary. Additionally, the life cycle emissions associated with manufacturing vehicles, facilities or infrastructure are considered optional.

5.7.4.1 Calculation methods for upstream transportation

Category 4 emissions may be calculated using the fuel-based method, distance-based method or spend-based method. These methods are discussed further below and presented in order of most to least precise. The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 4.1 of the Scope 3 Guidance, indicates which calculation method a reporting entity should select when calculating emissions from upstream transportation.



When calculating emissions related to upstream transportation (or other Scope 3 categories) from air transportation, the Scope 3 Guidance allows a reporting entity to apply a multiplier or correcting factor to GWPs to adjust for radiative forcing. This correcting factor accounts for the difference in the GWP of GHGs emitted at high altitudes. Generally, the higher the altitude at which a GHG is emitted, the higher the GWP of that GHG. When this correcting factor is applied, companies should disclose the specific correcting factor used, similar to disclosures about other emissions factors.

5.7.4.1.1 Fuel-based method (upstream transportation)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Guidance

Fuel-based method (transportation)

The fuel-based method should be used when companies can obtain data for fuel use from transport providers (and, if applicable, refrigerant leakage due to refrigeration of products) from vehicle fleets (e.g., trucks, trains, planes, vessels). Companies should also take into account any additional energy used and account for fugitive emissions (e.g., refrigerant loss or air-conditioning). Companies may optionally calculate any emissions from unladen backhaul (i.e., the return journey of the empty vehicle).

Where fuel use data is unavailable, the company may derive fuel use by using the:

- Amount spent on fuels and the average price of fuels
- Distance travelled and the vehicle's fuel efficiency
- Amount spent on transportation services, fuel cost share (as percent of total cost of transportation services) and the average price of fuels.

For calculating CO_2, the fuel-based method is more accurate than the distance-based method because fuel consumption is directly related to emissions.

The fuel-based method is best applied if the vehicle exclusively ships the reporting company's purchased goods (i.e., exclusive use or truckload shipping, rather than less-than-truckload (LTL) shipping). Otherwise, emissions should be allocated between goods shipped for the reporting company and goods shipped for other companies. See chapter 8 of the Scope 3 Standard for further guidance on allocating emissions. [EY note: Specific allocation methods for individual modes of transport omitted from this excerpt, refer to section 5.9 for guidance on allocation methods.]

If data required for allocation is not available or reliable due to the variety of goods transported in one vehicle at the same time, the distance-based method should be used to calculate Scope 3 emissions.

Fuel-based method	
This method estimates emissions related to transportation by determining the amount of fuel consumed and applying the appropriate emissions factor for that fuel.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Quantities of fuel (e.g., diesel, gasoline, jet fuel, biofuels) consumed ▸ Amount spent on fuels ▸ Quantities of fugitive emissions (e.g., from air conditioning and refrigeration) If needed to estimate fuel quantity consumed or to allocate emissions: ▸ Distance traveled ▸ Average fuel efficiency of the vehicle, expressed in units of fuel consumed per ton per distance transported ▸ Cost of fuels ▸ Volume and/or mass of purchased goods in the vehicle ▸ Information on whether the products are refrigerated in transport	▸ Fuel emissions factors, expressed in units of emissions per unit of energy consumed (e.g., kg CO_2e/gallons, CO_2e/Btu) ▸ For electric vehicles, electricity emissions factors, expressed in units of emissions per unit of electricity consumed (e.g., kg CO_2e/kWh) ▸ Fugitive emissions factors, expressed in units of emissions per unit (e.g., kg CO_2e/kg refrigerant leakage)

The fuel-based method calculates emissions related to transportation by multiplying the fuel burned by an emissions factor for that fuel. The emissions factors used in the fuel-based method should include combustion emissions at a minimum and, where possible, also include cradle-to-gate emissions factors, which include emissions from extraction, processing and transportation of the fuel to the point of use. Ultimately, category 4 aims to capture emissions from fuel used by the transportation provider from the point of extraction through combustion. That is, category 4 emissions include the Scope 1 emissions (combustion) and Scope 3 category 3 emissions (upstream emissions related to purchased fuel) of a reporting entity's transportation provider.

The Scope 3 Guidance acknowledges that the amount of the fuel consumed may not always be available and provides two additional methods to estimate the quantity of fuel consumed. The first method to estimate the quantity of fuel consumed is to divide the total fuel spend by the average fuel cost. This calculation is performed separately for each type of fuel used. If the actual mix of fuels used by the transportation supplier is not available, the reporting entity may estimate the fuel mix using statistics from reputable industry bodies or government statistical publications. The second method is to multiply the total distance traveled by the fuel efficiency of the vehicle. This calculation is performed separately for each class of vehicle.

If only a portion of the goods transported are related to the reporting entity, only a proportional amount of the emissions generated should be allocated to the reporting entity. The factor that limits cargo capacity for each vehicle type should be used to calculate the allocation. Generally, mass is the limiting factor for road, air and rail transportation, and volume is the limiting factor for marine transportation. The formula to allocate emissions estimated using the fuel-based method is therefore:

$$\text{Total fuel consumed} \times \left[\frac{\text{Mass/volume of reporting entity's goods}}{\text{Total mass/volume of goods transported}} \right] = \text{Allocated fuel use}$$

See section 5.9 for additional guidance on allocation.

Potential data sources for the fuel-based method include fuel receipts and purchase records from transportation providers or internal transportation management systems. The emissions factors used in this method could potentially be obtained from transportation carriers themselves, government agencies, the GHG protocol website, industry associations and various other associations.

5.7.4.1.2 *Distance-based method*

Distance-based method	
This method estimates emissions related to transportation by determining the mass, distance and mode of each shipment, then applying the appropriate mass-distance emissions factor for the vehicle used.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Mass or volume of the products transported/distributed ▸ Actual distances provided by transportation supplier (if actual distance is unavailable, companies may use the shortest theoretical distance)	▸ Emissions factor by mode of transportation (e.g., rail, air, road) or vehicle types (e.g., container vessel, semi-truck), expressed in units of GHGs per unit of mass (e.g., kg) or volume (e.g., Twenty-foot Equivalent Unit (TEU)) traveled (e.g., mile)

Each mode of transportation or vehicle type may have a different emissions factor, so a reporting entity should identify the various modes of transportations and vehicles used for each transportation leg separately. In addition, actual distances should be used in the distance-based when available. When this information is not available, a reporting entity may estimate the distance for each leg of the transportation supply chain using the shortest theoretical distance.

Potential data sources for activity data include purchase orders, information from the carrier, online maps and calculators, published port-to-port travel distance and internal management systems. Potential sources for emissions factors include transportation carriers, government agencies, the GHG Protocol website and various industry associations.

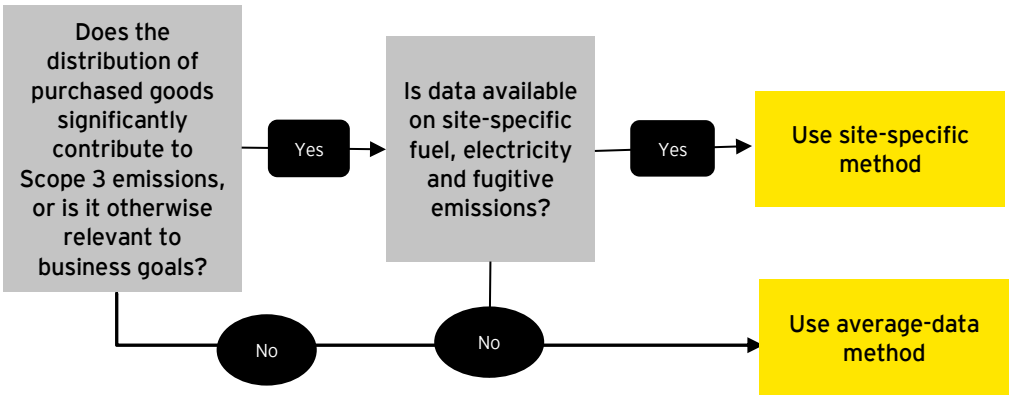
5.7.4.1.3 Spend-based method

Spend-based method	
This method estimates emissions related to transportation by determining the amount of money spent on each mode of transportation and applying secondary (EEIO) emissions factors.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Amount spent on transportation or distribution services, by type, using market values (e.g., dollars) ▸ If needed, inflation data to convert market values between the year of the EEIO emissions factors and the year of the activity data	▸ Cradle-to-gate emissions factors of the transportation type per unit of economic value (e.g., kg CO_2e/$)

Potential data sources for activity data include bills, invoices and internal accounting systems. Emissions factors should be obtained from EEIO databases. The GHG Protocol website provides a list of potential databases.

5.7.4.2 Calculation methods for upstream distribution

Category 4 emissions related to distribution (e.g., storage or warehouse facilities) may be calculated using the site-specific method or the average-data method. These methods are discussed further below and presented in order of most to least precise. The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 4.2 of the Scope 3 Guidance, indicates which calculation method a reporting entity should select when calculating emissions from upstream distribution based on significance and information available.



5.7.4.2.1 *Site-specific method*

Site-specific method	
This method estimates emissions related to distribution by obtaining site-specific fuel and energy data from the individual storage facility (e.g., warehouses, distribution centers) of distribution activities and multiplying them by appropriate emissions factors.	
Potential activity data	**Potential emissions factors**
▸ Site-specific fuel and electricity use ▸ Site-specific fugitive emissions (e.g., air conditioning, refrigerant leakage) ▸ The average occupancy rate of the storage facility (i.e., average total volume of goods stored)	▸ Site or regionally specific emissions factors for energy sources (e.g., electricity and fuels) per unit of consumption (e.g., kg CO_2e/kWh for electricity, kg CO_2e/gallon for diesel) ▸ Emissions factors of fugitive emissions (kg CO_2e/kg)

If a reporting entity only uses a portion of the storage in a distribution center, the emissions from the distribution center should be allocated (see section 5.9 for guidance on allocation methods). Additionally, emissions related to a reporting entity may be allocated based on different storage methods, as emissions can vary based on the type of storage provided (e.g., temperature-controlled storage, covered outdoor storage). Even though allocation by storage method is not required by the Scope 3 Guidance, we believe that doing so, when quality data is available, will result in more accurate and precise reporting. A reporting entity should make sure that the data used in the allocation is of sufficient quality and it should make any necessary disclosures regarding the allocation methods used.

For reporting entities with significant numbers of distribution centers, the Scope 3 Guidance allows the use of sampling to calculate total related emissions. See section 5.10 for a discussion of the Scope 3 Guidance's guidance on sampling.

Potential data sources for activity data include utility bills, invoices, purchase records, meter readings and internal systems. Potential data sources for emissions factors include lifecycle databases, suppliers, internal calculations and industry associations.

5.7.4.2.2 *Average-data method*

Average-data method	
This method estimates emissions related to distribution by collecting data on relevant units of goods stored and multiplying that data by the relevant secondary (e.g., industry average) emissions factor, often expressed in emissions per unit per time period stored.	
Potential activity data	**Potential emissions factors**
▸ Volume of purchased goods that are stored (e.g., square feet, cubic meters, pallet) or number of pallets needed to store purchased goods ▸ Average number of days that goods are stored	▸ Emissions factor per pallet per day stored in a facility ▸ Emissions factor per square foot or cubic meter per day stored in a facility

Potential data sources for activity data include supplier records and internal management systems. Emissions factors may be developed by the supplier or reporting entity or may be obtained from lifecycle databases and industry associations.

5.7.5 Category 5: Waste generated in operations

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

***Scope 3* Standard**

Chapter 5.5

Category 5: Waste generated in operations

This category includes emissions from third-party disposal and treatment of waste that is generated in the reporting company's owned or controlled operations in the reporting year. This category includes emissions from disposal of both solid waste and wastewater. Only waste treatment in facilities owned or operated by third parties is included in Scope 3. Waste treatment at facilities owned or controlled by the reporting company is accounted for in Scope 1 and Scope 2. Treatment of waste generated in operations is categorized as an upstream Scope 3 category because waste management services are purchased by the reporting company.

This category includes all future emissions that result from waste generated in the reporting year. (See section 5.4 for more information on the time boundary of Scope 3 categories.)

Waste treatment activities may include:

- Disposal in a landfill
- Disposal in a landfill with landfill-gas-to-energy (LFGTE) — i.e., combustion of landfill gas to generate electricity
- Recovery for recycling
- Incineration
- Composting
- Waste-to-energy (WTE) or energy-from-waste (EfW) — i.e., combustion of municipal solid waste (MSW) to generate electricity
- Wastewater treatment

Companies may optionally include emissions from transportation of waste.

See box 5.6 for guidance on accounting for emissions from recycling.

A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from waste generated in operations include the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of solid waste and wastewater management companies.

Category 5, *Waste generated from operations*, emissions are generated from the treatment of waste produced during the reporting entity's operations that are treated at facilities that are not owned/controlled by the reporting entity. These emissions are categorized as upstream emissions because these services are purchased by the reporting entity.

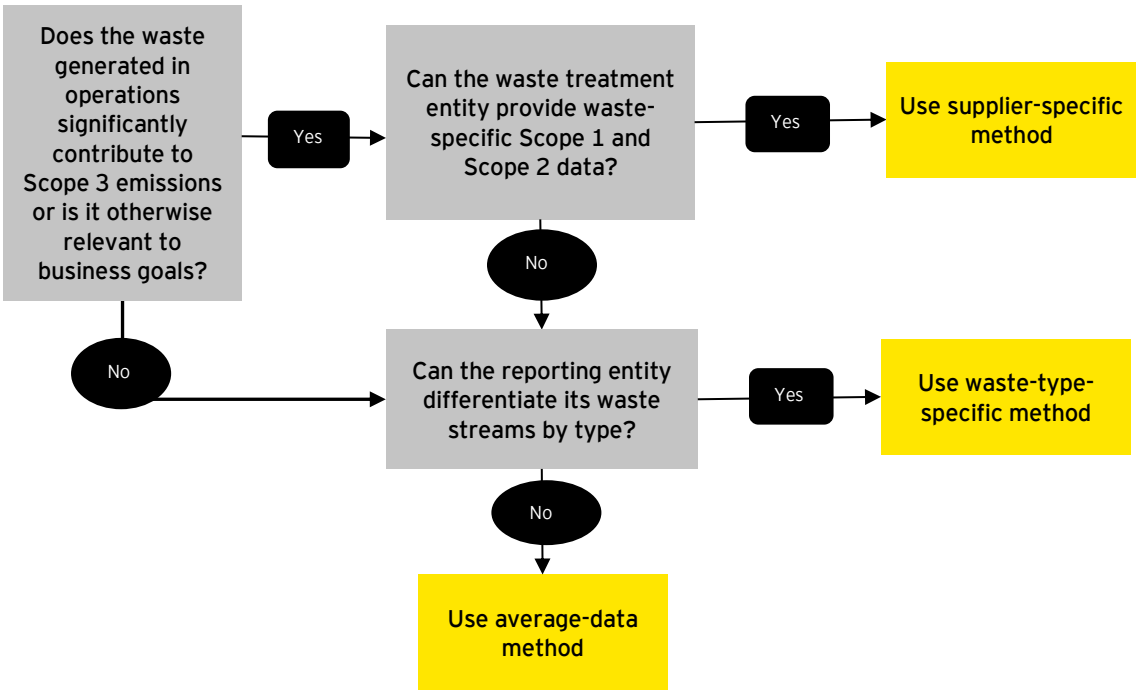
The minimum boundary of category 5 includes the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of waste management suppliers (e.g., solid waste and wastewater management companies) that occur during disposal or treatment. Emissions from the transportation of waste in vehicles that are owned/controlled by a third party are considered an optional activity and are not included in the minimum boundary. To calculate the emissions from the transportation of waste, see section 5.7.4.1 for the calculation methodologies for upstream transportation.

The nature and quantities of emissions generated by the treatment of waste depends on the type of waste (e.g., solid waste, wastewater) and treatment (e.g., incineration, landfill, recycling). For example, the following GHGs may be generated from the following types of waste treatment:

- CO_2 from the degradation of both fossil and biogenic carbon contained in waste
- CH_4 from decomposition of biogenic materials in landfill or waste-to-energy technologies
- HFCs from the disposal of refrigeration and air conditioning units

A reporting entity may calculate category 5 emissions using the supplier-specific method, the waste-type-specific method or the average-data calculation method. These methods are listed below in order of most to least precise.

The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 5.2 of the Scope 3 Guidance, indicates which calculation method a reporting entity should select when calculating emissions from waste generated in operations based on significance and information available.



5.7.5.1 Supplier-specific method (updated October 2025)

Supplier-specific method	
This method uses waste-specific Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions data directly from waste treatment entities (e.g., for incineration, recovery for recycling) and then allocates a portion of those emissions to the reporting entity.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Allocated Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of the waste-treatment entity (allocated based on the waste collected from the reporting entity)	▸ None

Reporting entities may obtain supplier-allocated emissions directly from the waste treatment entities. These would be considered the most precise emissions since they directly relate to the goods or services purchased by the reporting entity. Obtaining these emissions avoids the need for allocation by the reporting entity, which can add uncertainty to calculations.

If a waste treatment entity does not provide supplier-allocated emissions to the reporting entity, the Scope 3 Guidance does not specify how to allocate total emissions to the reporting entity when using the supplier-specific method to calculate category 5 emissions. However, the general allocation principles discussed in section 5.9 should be applied.

5.7.5.2 Waste-type-specific method

Waste-type-specific method	
This method involves estimating emissions using emissions factors for specific types of waste and waste treatment methods.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factor used**
▸ Waste produced (e.g., ton/cubic meter) by type of waste ▸ For each waste type, specific waste treatment method used (e.g., incineration, landfill, recycling)	▸ Waste-type-specific and waste-treatment-specific emissions factors (end-of-life processes only)

The waste-type-specific method requires a reporting entity to differentiate waste by its type and the related waste treatment method applied. For example, waste could be differentiated into cardboard that is recycled, food-waste that is put in a landfill or incinerated and wastewater that is treated. The waste treatment method used by a waste management supplier may be included on the related bills because the supplier often charges different rates depending on the treatment method used. Potential data sources for emissions factors to use in the waste-type-specific method are lifecycle databases and industry associations.

5.7.5.3 Average-data method

Average-data method	
This method involves estimating emissions based on total waste (instead of types of waste) for each disposal method (e.g., landfill) and average emissions factors for each method.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factor used**
▸ Total mass of waste generated in operations ▸ Proportion of waste treated by different methods (e.g., percentage landfilled, incinerated, recycled)	▸ Average waste-treatment-specific emissions factors based on all waste disposal types (end-of-life processes only)

The average-data method is the least precise calculation method for category 5 emissions but is often used when the type of waste produced is unknown.

The waste treatment method used by a waste management supplier may be included on the related bills because the supplier often charges different rates depending on the treatment method used. Some suppliers also include the total mass of waste collected from a reporting entity on those bills. Potential sources for emissions factors include lifecycle databases.

5.7.5.4 Emissions from recycling waste from operations and incineration with energy recovery

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Guidance

Chapter 5

Accounting for emissions from recycling

Emissions reductions associated with recycling are due to two factors:

- The difference in emissions between extracting and processing virgin material versus preparing recycled material for reuse

- A reduction in emissions that would otherwise have occurred if the waste had been sent to a landfill or other waste treatment method.

Companies may encounter recycling in three circumstances, each of which is relevant to a different Scope 3 category (see table 5.1 and figure 5.1).

Emissions reductions from recycling can impact an entity in three different ways, with each way impacting a different category of emissions. The table below refers to the three circumstances when recycling will impact an entity along with the Scope 3 category that is impacted by each.

Circumstance	Relevant Scope 3 category
Reporting entity purchases items with recycled content	Category 1 or category 2
Reporting entity generates waste during operations and sends that waste for recycling	Category 5
Reporting entity sells products with content that can be recycled	Category 12

A reporting entity that buys items that contain recycled content reports emissions for the related recycling processes within category 1, as these emissions are built into the emissions factor for that product.

A reporting entity that sends its waste for recycling reports emissions from this waste disposal in category 5, but it will use a lower emissions factor to reflect that some of the waste was recycled.

A reporting entity that sells products that contain recyclable content must consider that those products will eventually become waste, which can be recycled. The emissions generated from recycling the sold product at the end of its life are reported in category 12.

In addition, entities may recover energy from the process of incinerating waste, a process known as waste to energy. If a reporting entity purchases energy from the same entity it sends waste to, accounting for emissions from the waste-to-energy combustion process both upstream (i.e., in Scope 2) and downstream (i.e., in Scope 3 category 5) would double count these emissions. As a result, a reporting entity should only include emissions from purchased energy generated from waste in Scope 2 (where it is likely included in the grid-average emissions factor). Any emissions from preparing and transporting the waste should still be reported in category 5.

If waste from operations is incinerated and used for energy on site and in facilities owned or controlled by the reporting entity, the emissions associated with the incineration are included in Scope 1 emissions.

As recycling and waste-to-energy both reduce category 5 emissions, the Scope 3 Guidance suggests that a reporting entity separately report additional information (e.g., emissions from recycling compared to the emissions from producing the equivalent material, emissions per unit of electrical generation from a waste-to-energy facility compared to the comparable grid average emissions) to allow internal and external stakeholders to understand the full impact of the selected waste treatment method, including impacts outside of that reporting entity's emissions inventory.

5.7.5.5 Emissions from wastewater (updated June 2025)

The emissions generated from processing wastewater are highly variable depending on the type of wastewater generated and how much processing is required. The Scope 3 Guidance identifies industries with high emissions from wastewater (i.e., starch refining; alcohol refining; pulp and paper; vegetables, fruits and juices; and food processing) and indicates that these industries should use the guidance provided

by the IPCC to calculate emissions from the treatment of wastewater (initially published in 2006[20] and subsequently updated in 2019[21]). The IPCC outlines three different calculation methods with varying levels of precision. The method selected will depend on the country in which the wastewater is generated.

- **Tier 1**: A basic approach using default emissions factors and general assumptions
- **Tier 2**: A more detailed method that incorporates country-specific data and local conditions
- **Tier 3**: The most precise approach, involving direct measurements

If a reporting entity is accounting for emissions generated in a country with limited data, it may need to choose the most basic calculation method. If a reporting entity is accounting for emissions from a country with good data and advanced methodologies, it should strive to use the most precise calculation method available. Precise emissions calculations require accurate data on wastewater generation, treatment processes and local conditions. This includes information on the type of treatment technology used, the amount of organic matter in the wastewater and the operational conditions. The IPCC also provides default emissions factors for various types of wastewater treatment systems, which can be used in the calculations. These factors vary based on the treatment method (e.g., anaerobic vs. aerobic treatment).

5.7.6 Category 6: Business travel (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

***Scope 3* Standard**

Chapter 5.5

Category 6: Business travel

This category includes emissions from the transportation of employees for business-related activities in vehicles owned or operated by third parties, such as aircraft, trains, buses, and passenger cars.

Emissions from transportation in vehicles owned or controlled by the reporting company are accounted for in either Scope 1 (for fuel use) or Scope 2 (for electricity use). Emissions from leased vehicles operated by the reporting company not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2 are accounted for in Scope 3, category 8 (Upstream leased assets). Emissions from transportation of employees to and from work are accounted for in Scope 3, category 7 (Employee commuting).

Emissions from business travel may arise from:

- Air travel
- Rail travel
- Bus travel
- Automobile travel (e.g., business travel in rental cars or employee-owned vehicles other than employee commuting to and from work)
- Other modes of travel

Companies may optionally include emissions from business travelers staying in hotels.

A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from business travel include the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of transportation companies (e.g., airlines).

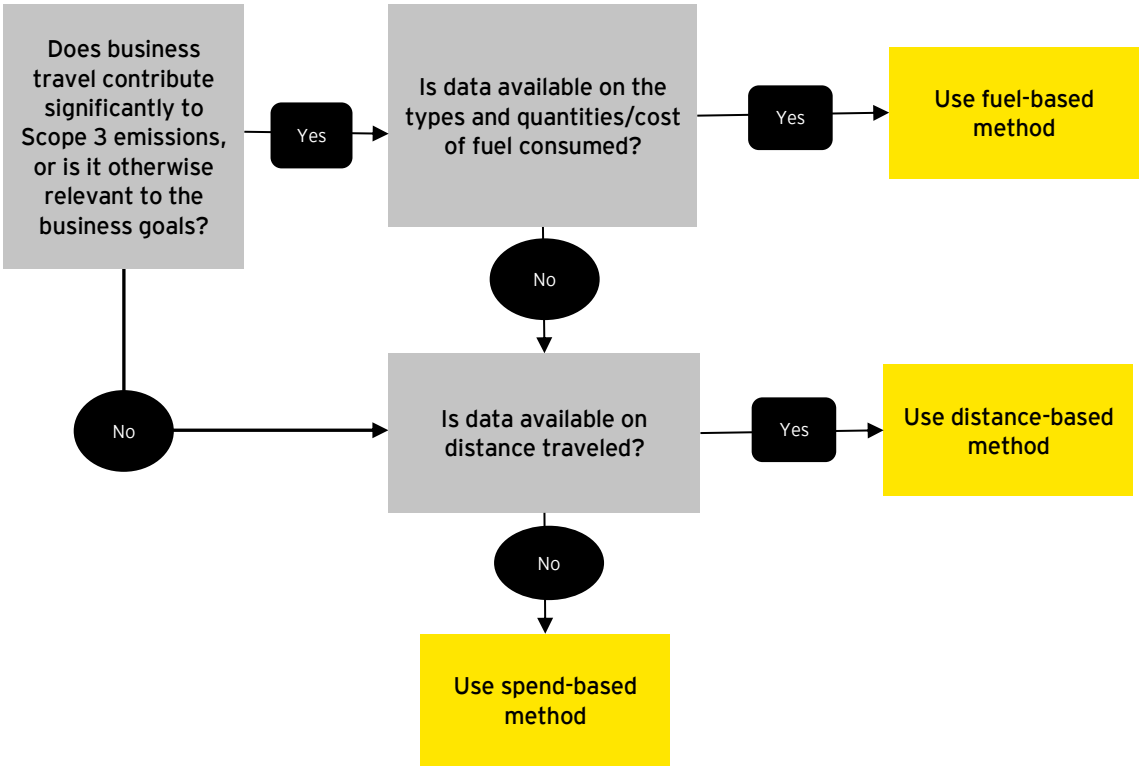
[20] Publications – IPCC-TFI (iges.or.jp)

[21] Publications – IPCC-TFI (iges.or.jp)

Category 6, *Business Travel*, emissions are generated by the transportation of employees for business-related activities in vehicles owned and operated by third parties. That is, the minimum boundary for category 6 includes the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of transportation carriers that occur during their use of vehicles (e.g., from energy use). Emissions from leased vehicles operated by the reporting entity not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2 are excluded from this category and reported in Scope 3, Category 8, *Upstream leased assets*. Emissions from typical employee commutes are also excluded from the category and instead reported in Scope 3 Category 7, *Employee commuting*. Emissions from business travelers staying in hotels and life cycle emissions associated with manufacturing vehicles or infrastructure are considered optional and not included in the minimum boundary.

A reporting entity may use the fuel-based method, distance-based method or spend-based method to calculate category 6 emissions. These methods are listed below in order of most to least precise.

The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 6.1 of the Scope 3 Guidance, indicates which calculation method a reporting entity should select when calculating emissions from business travel based on significance and information available.



When calculating emissions related to business air travel, the Scope 3 Guidance allows a reporting entity to apply a multiplier or correcting factor to GWPs to adjust for radiative forcing. This correcting factor accounts for the difference in the GWP of GHGs emitted at high altitudes. Generally, the higher the altitude at which a GHG is emitted, the higher the GWP of that GHG. When this factor is applied, companies should disclose the specific factor used, similar to disclosures about other emissions factors.

How we see it

A growing number of airlines are using sustainable aviation fuel (SAF) to fuel their planes. Although the Scope 3 Guidance does not explicitly address the use of SAF, it does indicate that emissions factors should at a minimum include emissions from fuel combustion, and should, where possible, include cradle-to-gate emissions of the fuel (i.e., from extraction, processing and transportation to the point of use). Therefore, we believe a reporting entity may claim benefits from SAF used by airlines for employee travel. The emissions benefits of SAF come from well-to-tank emissions reductions because the growing, harvesting and processing of biofuels is less impactful than the mining, drilling and processing of petroleum-based fuels. For a reporting entity to claim the benefits of SAF, its category 6 emissions calculations must include these well-to-tank emissions (i.e., the reporting entity cannot only include emissions from fuel combustion). Companies should disclose that the emissions factor applied includes cradle-to-gate emissions and should consider separately disclosing the emissions reductions achieved through the use of SAF to provide transparency to report users.

5.7.6.1 Fuel-based method

The calculation method for the fuel-based method in category 6 is the same as category 4. See section 5.7.4.1.1 for more details on this method. If the fuel-based method is used, the emissions from the transportation provider may need to be allocated to the employee (see section 5.9 for guidance on allocation). Emission factors related to business travel may already be adjusted and reported at the individual passenger level, so a reporting entity will need to understand the emission factor used. If a reporting entity elects to report category 6 emissions using the fuel-based method but includes hotel stays in this category, it should multiply the number of hotel nights by an emissions factor for the type of hotel per night (e.g., kilograms of CO_2e emitted per hotel night by hotel type) and add these emissions to the fuel-based method emissions. For example, a reporting entity may choose to group hotels by country, as different countries have different emissions factors.

5.7.6.2 Distance-based method

Distance-based method	
This method estimates emissions related to employee travel by multiplying activity data (i.e., vehicle-miles or person-miles traveled by vehicle type) by emissions factors (typically default national emissions factors by vehicle type). Vehicle types include aircraft, rail, subway, bus, automobile and others.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Total distance traveled by each mode of transportation for employees in the reporting year. If possible, include: ▸ Country of travel (transportation emissions factors may be different by country) ▸ Specific type of vehicle used for travel by transportation providers ▸ Specific type of vehicle used for travel by individuals	▸ Emissions factor by mode of transportation per passenger-mile traveled ▸ Kg of CO_2e emitted per hotel night by hotel type

The distances traveled by employees on business by mode of travel can be collected using travel agencies, internal expense and reimbursement systems, surveys or by working with travel companies.

If it is not feasible to collect travel data from all employees, a reporting entity may select a representative sample of employees and extrapolate the total business travel of all employees (see section 5.10 for further guidance on sampling). A reporting entity may also group employees with similar travel profiles. If a reporting entity elects to report category 6 emissions using the distance-based method but includes

hotel stays in this category, it should multiply the number of hotel nights by an emissions factor for the type of hotel per night (e.g., kilograms of CO_2e emitted per hotel night by hotel type) and add these emissions to the distance-based method emissions.

5.7.6.3 Spend-based method

The calculation method for the spend-based method in category 6 is the same as category 4. See section 5.7.4.1.3 for more details on this method. If a reporting entity elects to report category 6 emissions using the spend-based method but includes hotel stays in this category, it should multiply the number of hotel nights by an emissions factor for the type of hotel per night (e.g., kilograms of CO_2e emitted per hotel night by hotel type) and add these emissions to the spend-based method emissions.

5.7.7 Category 7: Employee commuting (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

***Scope 3* Standard**

Chapter 5.5

Category 7: Employee commuting

This category includes emissions from the transportation of employees between their homes and their worksites.

Emissions from employee commuting may arise from:

- Automobile travel
- Bus travel
- Rail travel
- Air travel
- Other modes of transportation

Companies may include emissions from teleworking (i.e., employees working remotely) in this category.

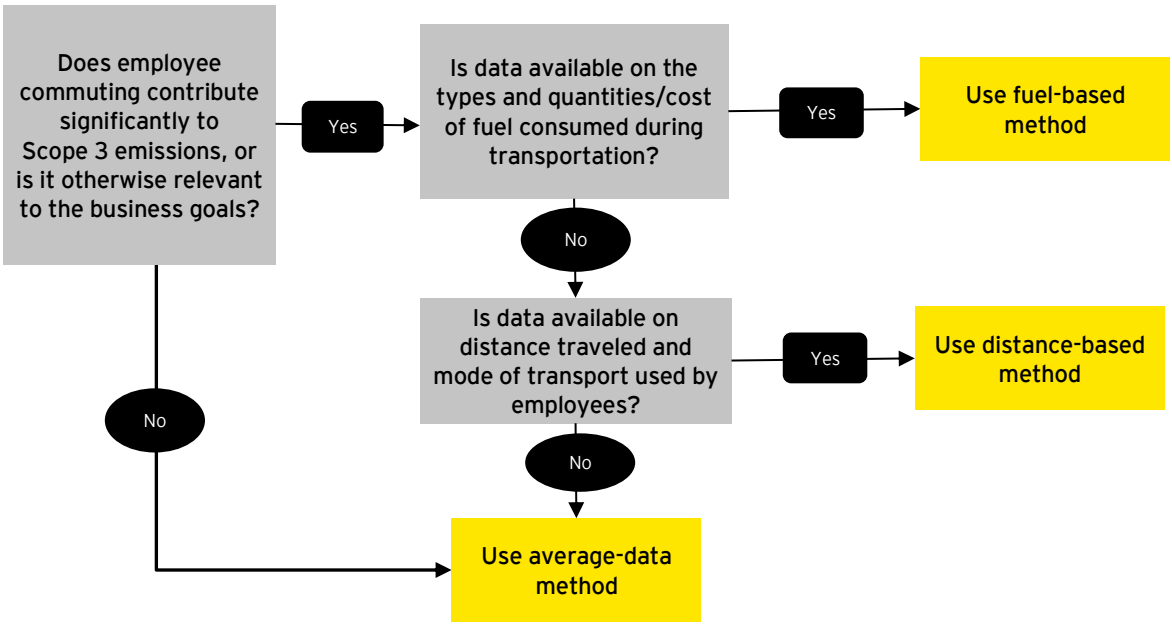
A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from employee commuting include the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of employees and third-party transportation providers.

Even though employee commuting is not always purchased or reimbursed by the reporting company, it is categorized as an upstream Scope 3 category because it is a service that enables company operations, similar to purchased or acquired goods and services.

Category 7, *Employee commuting*, emissions are generated when employees travel from their home to their worksite as part of their typical commute. The minimum boundary for category 7 includes the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of employees and transportation providers that occur during the use of their vehicles (e.g., from energy use). It does not include emissions from business travel, which are included in category 6. Additionally, emissions from teleworking are considered an optional activity and are not included in the minimum boundary. The Scope 3 Guidance defines employees as employees of entities and facilities owned, operated or leased by the reporting entity. Reporting entities may also include employees of other relevant entities (e.g., franchises) in this category, as well as consultants, contractors or other individuals who are not employed by the reporting entity but commute to facilities the reporting entity owns and operates.

A reporting entity may use the fuel-based method, distance-based method or average-data method to calculate category 7 emissions. These methods are listed below in order of most to least precise.

The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 7.1 of the Scope 3 Guidance, indicates which calculation method a reporting entity should select when calculating emissions from employee commuting based on significance and information available.



Refer to section 5.7.6 for considerations when calculating emissions related to employee commuting from air travel.

5.7.7.1 Fuel-based method

The calculation method for the fuel-based method in category 7 is the same as category 4 (and category 6). See section 5.7.4.1.1 for more details on this method. If the fuel-based method is used for employees using public transportation, the emissions from the transportation provider may need to be allocated to the employee (see section 5.9 for guidance on allocation). Emissions factors related to public transportation may already be adjusted and reported at the individual passenger level, so a reporting entity will need to understand the emissions factor used.

5.7.7.2 Distance-based method

Distance-based method	
This method estimates emissions related to employee commuting by multiplying activity data (i.e., distance traveled by employees for commuting over the reporting year) by emissions factors for each mode of transportation (e.g., default national emissions factors by vehicle type). Vehicle types include aircraft, rail, subway, bus, automobile and others.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Total distance traveled by each mode of transportation for employees in the reporting year	▸ Emissions factor by mode of transportation per passenger-mile traveled

A reporting entity can collect data on employee commuting habits through an annual survey, which allows it to obtain average information on commuting habits, including distance traveled per day, vehicle types used, number of commuting days and region in which the commute is completed.

If it is not feasible to collect commuting data from all employees, a reporting entity may select a representative sample of employees and extrapolate that data to calculate the total commuting emissions of all employees (see section 5.10 for further guidance on sampling).

If a reporting entity elects to report emissions related to employee teleworking (e.g., electricity and gas used while teleworking), this information could also be gathered through a survey. If a reporting entity elects to report emissions related to employee teleworking, it should only report the additional emissions resulting from working from home and not the emissions which would occur regardless of whether the employee was at home ("baseline emissions"). For example, emissions generated by electricity used to power the employee's laptop and monitor during the workday should be reported, but the emissions generated from energy consumed by the employee's refrigerator are considered baseline emissions and should not be reported.

5.7.7.3 Average-data method

Average-data method	
This method estimates emissions using average secondary activity data to estimate distance commuted and mode of transportation	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Number of employees ▸ Average commuting distance by employee per day ▸ Average mode of transportation used by employees ▸ Average number of working days per year	▸ Emissions factor by mode of transportation per passenger-mile traveled

A reporting entity can obtain secondary data for use in the average-data method calculation from national transportation agencies, national statistic publications or industry associations.

5.7.8 Category 8: Upstream leased assets (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 5.5

Category 8: Upstream leased assets

This category includes emissions from the operation of assets that are leased by the reporting company in the reporting year and not already included in the reporting company's Scope 1 or Scope 2 inventories. This category is only applicable to companies that operate leased assets (i.e., lessees). For companies that own and lease assets to others (i.e., lessors), see category 13 (Downstream leased assets).

Leased assets may be included in a company's Scope 1 or Scope 2 inventory depending on the type of lease and the consolidation approach the company uses to define its organizational boundaries (see section 5.2).

If the reporting company leases an asset for only part of the reporting year, it should account for emissions for the portion of the year that the asset was leased. A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from upstream leased assets include the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of lessors (depending on the lessor's consolidation approach).

As described in section 2.5.5.1, the consolidation approach (i.e., equity share, operational control or financial control) that a reporting entity selects determines which scope the emissions related to leased assets are reported in.

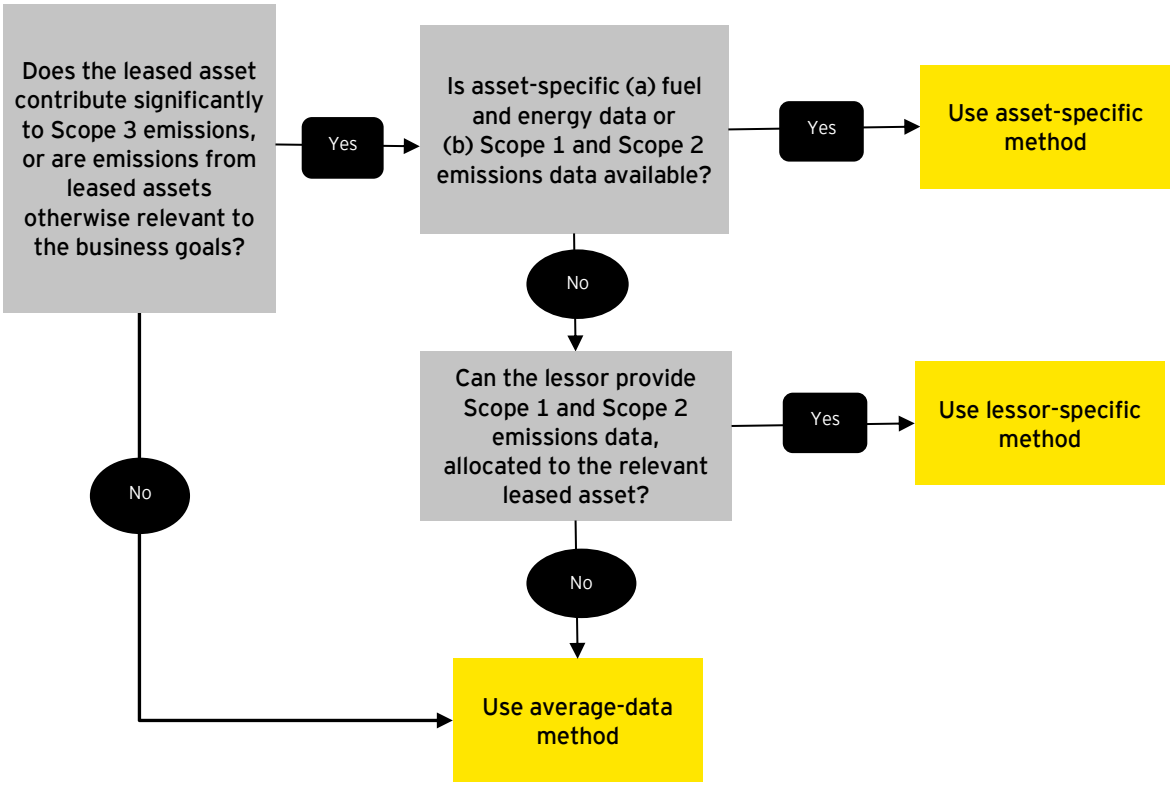
A lessee reporting entity reports all emissions related to leased assets that are outside of its organizational boundary in Scope 3 Category 8, *Upstream leased assets*. Conversely, a lessor reporting entity reports all emissions related to leased assets that are outside of its organizational boundary in Scope 3 Category 13, *Downstream leased assets*.

A reporting entity that only leases an asset that is outside of its organizational boundary for a portion of the year should only report emissions related to that part of the year.

The minimum boundary for category 8 includes the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of the leased asset that occur during the reporting entity's use of the leased assets (e.g., from energy use) that are not in its organizational boundary. Lifecycle emissions associated with the manufacturing or construction of leased assets are considered an optional activity and are not included in the minimum boundary.

A reporting entity may use the asset-specific method, lessor-specific method or average-data method to calculate category 8 emissions. These methods are listed below in order of most to least precise.

The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 8.1 of the Scope 3 Guidance, indicates which calculation method a reporting entity should select when calculating emissions from upstream leased assets based on significance and information available.



5.7.8.1 Asset-specific method

Asset-specific method	
This method estimates emissions related to upstream leased assets using asset-specific (e.g., site-specific) fuel and energy use data, process and fugitive emissions data and/or Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions data from individual leased assets.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions data for the leased asset ▸ Asset-specific fuel use and electricity, steam, heating and cooling use ▸ Activity data related to non-combustion emissions (i.e., industrial process or fugitive emissions)	▸ Site or regionally specific emissions factors for energy sources (e.g., electricity and fuels) per unit of consumption (e.g., kg CO_2e/kWh for electricity, kg CO_2e/gallon for diesel) ▸ Emissions factors of fugitive and process emissions

Activity data for category 8 emissions may be obtained from utility bills, purchase records, meter readings or internal IT systems. Emissions factors may be obtained from lifecycle databases, internally developed emissions factors, government agencies and industry associations.

If a reporting entity does not lease the entire asset and the related emissions generating assets are not sub-metered (e.g., the reporting entity leases a single floor of a building), the reporting entity should allocate the emissions from the entire asset to only the portion of the asset it leases (see section 5.9 for guidance on allocation).

5.7.8.2 Lessor-specific method

Lessor-specific method	
This method estimates emissions related to upstream leased assets by obtaining the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions, fuel and energy use data and process and fugitive emissions data from lessor(s) and allocating them to the relevant leased asset(s) (e.g., office space leased in a building that is not sub-metered).	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions data for the lessor ▸ Lessor's total fuel and electricity use ▸ Lessor's fugitive emissions (e.g., from refrigerants) ▸ Lessor's process emissions ▸ Total area/volume/quantity of lessors' assets and total area/volume/quantity of the reporting entity's leased assets	▸ Site or regionally specific emissions factors for energy sources (e.g., electricity and fuels) per unit of consumption (e.g., kg CO_2e/kWh for electricity, kg CO_2e/gallon for diesel) ▸ Emissions factors of fugitive and process emissions

The lessor-specific method requires the reporting entity to obtain the lessor's Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions, fuel and energy use data and process and fugitive emissions data with related emissions factors and then allocate them to the leased asset(s). The difference between the asset-specific method and the lessor-specific method is the granularity of the data obtained (i.e., site-/asset-specific vs. lessor in total). To allocate the lessor's emissions, a reporting entity should determine the total amount of the lessor's assets (in terms of area, volume or quantity) compared to the asset(s) leased. See section 5.9 for additional guidance on allocation.

5.7.8.3 Average-data method

Average-data method	
This method estimates emissions for each leased asset, or groups of leased assets, based on average statistics and secondary data.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Floor space leased ▸ Number of leased buildings, by building type (e.g., office, retail, warehouse, factory) ▸ Number and type of leased assets other than buildings that give rise to Scope 1 or Scope 2 emissions (e.g., company cars, trucks)	▸ Average emissions factors by floor space, expressed in units of emissions per square meter, square foot occupied (e.g., kg CO_2e/ft^2/year) ▸ Average emissions factors by building type, expressed in units of emissions per building (e.g., kg CO_2e/small office block/year) ▸ Emissions factors by asset type, expressed in units of emissions per asset (e.g., kg CO_2e/car/year)

The average-data method is less accurate than the other methods for category 8 emissions and should be used when purchase records, electricity bills or meter readings of fuel or energy use are not available.

Potential data sources for activity data include the reporting entity's internal records, such as a lease listing. Emissions factors may be obtained from online data sources (e.g., the US Energy Information Administration has published a dataset of average energy use by building type titled the Commercial Buildings Energy Consumption Survey (CBECS).

5.8 Downstream categories

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Glossary

Downstream emissions: Indirect GHG emissions from sold goods and services. Downstream emissions also include emissions from products that are distributed but not sold (*i.e.,* without receiving payment).

Chapter 6

6.4 Accounting for downstream emissions

The applicability of downstream *Scope 3* categories depends on whether products sold by the reporting company are final products or intermediate products (see section 5.6). In certain cases, the eventual end use of sold intermediate products may be unknown. For example, a company may produce an intermediate product with many potential downstream applications, each of which has a different GHG emissions profile, and be unable to reasonably estimate the downstream emissions associated with the various end uses of the intermediate product. In such a case, companies may disclose and justify the exclusion of downstream emissions from categories 9, 10, 11, and 12 in the report (but should not selectively exclude a subset of those categories).

Chapter 5

5.6 Applicability of downstream *Scope 3* categories to final and intermediate products

Upstream emissions are applicable for all types of purchased products. The applicability of downstream *Scope 3* categories depends on whether products sold by the reporting company are final products or intermediate products. (See box 5.3 for descriptions of final and intermediate products.) If a company produces an intermediate product (*e.g.,* a motor), which becomes part of a final product (*e.g.,* an automobile), the company accounts for downstream emissions associated with the intermediate product (the motor), not the final product (the automobile). Table 5.11 explains the applicability of downstream *Scope 3* categories to final and intermediate products sold by the reporting company. See section 6.4 for guidance on disclosing and justifying exclusions of downstream emissions from sold intermediate goods when their eventual end use is unknown.

Downstream emissions are Scope 3 emissions that occur subsequent to the sale, distribution or other transfer of control from the reporting entity to another entity or individual. Products sold or distributed by a reporting entity may be final products (i.e., the product sold is used or consumed by the end user in its current form) or may be intermediate products (i.e., the product sold is further processed to create another product that will be sold to the end user). If a reporting entity sells a final product, the reporting entity's downstream emissions will include the emissions generated by the product's end user. If a reporting entity sells an intermediate product, the reporting entity will only account for the downstream emissions generated by the intermediate product (the product the reporting entity is responsible for producing). The reporting entity is not responsible for reporting emissions from the totality of the final product.

At times, a reporting entity may not have insight into how the intermediate product it sold or distributed will be used. In cases where the use of the sold intermediate product is truly unknown, a reporting entity may not be able to estimate the associated downstream emissions of the product. In these cases, the reporting entity may exclude emissions from categories 9–12 but should disclose and justify the reason for the exclusion (i.e., the downstream emissions are not estimable because use of the intermediate product is not known). Once a reporting entity has determined that downstream emissions related to an intermediate product are not estimable it must apply that consistently to categories 9–12. It may not elect to only exclude certain of those categories.

5.8.1 Category 9: Downstream transportation and distribution (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

***Scope 3* Standard**

Chapter 5.5

Category 9: Downstream transportation and distribution

This category includes emissions from transportation and distribution of products sold by the reporting company in the reporting year between the reporting company's operations and the end consumer (if not paid for by the reporting company), in vehicles and facilities not owned or controlled by the reporting company. This category includes emissions from retail and storage. Outbound transportation and distribution services that are purchased by the reporting company are excluded from category 9 and included in category 4 (Upstream transportation and distribution) because the reporting company purchases the service. Category 9 only includes transportation- and distribution-related emissions that occur after the reporting company pays to produce and distribute its products. See table 5.7 for guidance on accounting for emissions from transportation and distribution in the value chain.

Emissions from downstream transportation and distribution can arise from:

- Storage of sold products in warehouses and distribution centers
- Storage of sold products in retail facilities
- Air transport
- Rail transport
- Road transport
- Marine transport

Companies may include emissions from customers traveling to retail stores in this category, which can be significant for companies that own or operate retail facilities. See section 5.6 for guidance on the applicability of category 9 to final products and intermediate products sold by the reporting company. A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from downstream transportation and distribution include the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of transportation companies, distribution companies, retailers, and (optionally) customers.

Scope 3 Guidance

Chapter 9

If the reporting company sells an intermediate product, the company should report emissions from transportation and distribution of this intermediate product between the point of sale by the reporting company and either (1) the end consumer (if the eventual end use of the intermediate product is known) or (2) business customers (if the eventual end use of the intermediate product is unknown).

Category 9, *Downstream transportation and distribution*, emissions are those from the transportation and distribution of products sold by the reporting entity in vehicles not owned/controlled by the reporting entity or not paid for by the reporting entity. This category also includes emissions from retail or storage in facilities not owned/controlled by the reporting entity. See section 5.7.1.5 for discussion on the classification of transportation between Scope 3 categories.

When a reporting entity sells an intermediate product and the eventual end use of the product is known, the reporting entity reports emissions from the transportation and distribution of the intermediate product to the end user. If the eventual end use of the product is unknown, the reporting entity should report emissions related to the transportation and distributions to business customers.

The minimum boundary for category 9 includes Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of transportation providers, distributors and retailers that occur during their use of vehicles and facilities (e.g., from energy use). Emissions from customers traveling to retail facilities and life cycle emissions associated with manufacturing vehicles, facilities or infrastructure are considered optional and not included in the minimum boundary.

When calculating emissions related to downstream transportation and distribution from air travel, the Scope 3 Guidance allows a reporting entity to apply a multiplier or correcting factor to GWPs to adjust for radiative forcing. This correcting factor accounts for the difference in the GWP of GHGs emitted at high altitudes. Generally, the higher the altitude at which a GHG is emitted, the higher the GWP of that GHG. When this factor is applied, companies should disclose the specific factor used, similar to disclosures about other emissions factors.

5.8.1.1 Calculation methods for downstream transportation

The emissions from downstream transportation can be calculated using the same methods as Category 4, *Upstream transportation and distribution*. See section 5.7.4.1 for a description of these methods as well as how a reporting entity should determine which method to use.

More data may be available to a reporting entity on emissions related to upstream transportation than downstream transportation. Therefore, it is not required to use the same calculation method for upstream and downstream transportation categories.

5.8.1.2 Calculation methods for downstream distribution

The emissions from downstream distribution can be calculated using the same methods as Category 4, *Upstream transportation and distribution*. See section 5.7.4.2 for a description of these methods as well as how a reporting entity should determine which method to use.

5.8.2 Category 10: Processing sold products (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 5.5

Category 10: Processing of sold products

This category includes emissions from processing of sold intermediate products by third parties (e.g., manufacturers) subsequent to sale by the reporting company. Intermediate products are products that require further processing, transformation, or inclusion in another product before use (see box 5.3), and therefore result in emissions from processing subsequent to sale by the reporting company and before use by the end consumer. Emissions from processing should be allocated to the intermediate product.

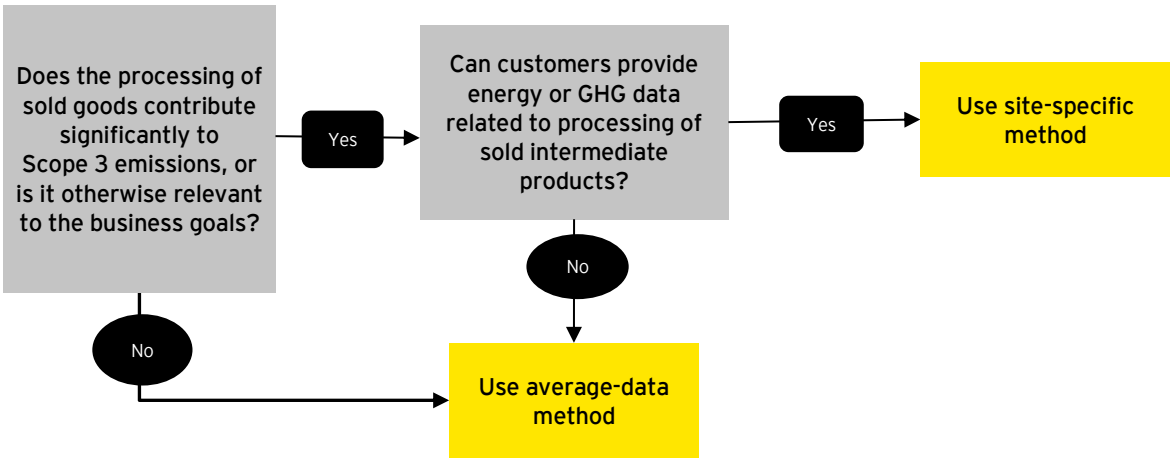
In certain cases, the eventual end use of sold intermediate products may be unknown. For example, a company may produce an intermediate product with many potential downstream applications, each of which has a different GHG emissions profile, and be unable to reasonably estimate the downstream emissions associated with the various end uses of the intermediate product. See section 6.4 for guidance in cases where downstream emissions associated with sold intermediate products are unknown.

Companies may calculate emissions from category 10 without collecting data from customers or other value chain partners. … A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from processing of sold intermediate products include the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of downstream value chain partners (e.g., manufacturers).

Category 10, *Processing of sold products*, emissions are generated by processing sold intermediate products and the minimum boundary includes Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of downstream companies that occur during processing. As discussed in section 5.8.1 (category 9), the end use of the intermediate product may be known or unknown. If the use of the intermediate product is not known, it may not be possible to estimate category 10 emissions. See section 5.8 for additional guidance regarding reporting emissions when use of the intermediate product is not known. All processing steps that occur until the final finished product should be accounted for within this category.

A reporting entity may use the site-specific method or average-data method to calculate category 10 emissions. These methods are listed below in order of most to least precise.

The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 10.1 of the Scope 3 Guidance, indicates which calculation method a reporting entity should select when calculating emissions from processing of sold products based on significance and information available.



5.8.2.1 Site-specific method

Site-specific method	
This method estimates emissions related to downstream processing by obtaining site-specific fuel and energy data and waste generated from the facility (e.g., manufacturing plant) of the related processing activities of the intermediate sold product and multiplying them by appropriate emissions factors.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Types and quantities of intermediate goods sold by the reporting entity ▸ Quantities of energy (including electricity and fuels) consumed in processes ▸ Mass of waste generated in processes ▸ Activity data related to non-combustion emissions (i.e., industrial process or fugitive emissions)	▸ Site or regionally specific emissions factors for energy sources (e.g., electricity and fuels) per unit of consumption (e.g., kg CO_2e/kWh for electricity, kg CO_2e/gallon for diesel) ▸ Emissions factors for waste outputs ▸ Emissions factors of fugitive and process emissions

A reporting entity may collect information on the size or amount and type of intermediate products sold from internal systems. Activity data on downstream processing can be requested or surveyed from downstream customers, if known. Emissions factors can be obtained from the manufacturer and industry associations.

If downstream processes include intermediate products from other suppliers or material inputs other than those sold by the reporting entity, the reporting entity should allocate the emissions to the intermediate products sold by the reporting entity. See section 5.9 for guidance on allocation methods.

5.8.2.2 Average-data method

Average-data method	
This method estimates emissions using data on the types of downstream processes used to transform or process the sold intermediate products into final products and applying industry average emissions factors.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Processes involved in transforming or processing sold intermediate products into final products ▸ Amount of intermediate product sold (i.e., mass, economic value)	▸ Average emissions factors for processing stages required to transform intermediate products into final products

If the downstream processes used to transform or process the intermediate products use multiple inputs, reporting entities may need to allocate emissions to the specific intermediate product sold by the reporting entity. Refer to section 5.9 for more information on allocation.

Data on the amount of intermediate products sold may be obtained from sales records or internal IT systems, and data on the processes used in transformation may be obtained from associations or databases that contain industry average data. Emissions factors may be obtained from lifecycle databases, manufacturers or industry associations.

The illustration below, based on example 10.2 of the Scope 3 Guidance, is an example of how a reporting entity might calculate emissions from processing the use of sold products using the average-data method.

Illustration 5-5: Calculating emissions from processing of sold products using the average-data method

Company A produces sugar and sells it to Company B, who uses it to make candy. Company B informs Company A that the two processes used to transform the sugar into candy are mixing and cooking. Company A collected industry average emissions factors for both processes and used the information to calculate emissions from the candy mixing and cooking process.

Process	Mass of sold sugar (lbs)	Emissions factor of process (kg CO_2e/lbs)	Total emissions (kg CO_2e)
Mixing	1,000	1.5	1,500
Cooking	1,000	2.7	2,700
			4,200

Based on the calculations above, Company A reports a total of 4,200 kg CO_2e emissions for the processing of sugar sold to Company B.

5.8.3 Category 11: Use of sold products

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

***Scope 3* Standard**

Chapter 5.5

Category 11: Use of sold products

This category includes emissions from the use of goods and services sold by the reporting company in the reporting year. A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from use of sold products include the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of end users. End users include both consumers and business customers that use final products.

This standard divides emissions from the use of sold products into two types:

- Direct use-phase emissions
- Indirect use-phase emissions

The minimum boundary of category 11 includes direct use-phase emissions of sold products. Companies may also account for indirect use-phase emissions of sold products, and should do so when indirect use-phase emissions are expected to be significant. See table 5.8 for descriptions and examples of direct and indirect use-phase emissions. [*EY Note: Refer to the table in this section below for examples of direct and indirect use-phase emissions that is based on table 5.8 of the Scope 3 Standard*]

This category includes the total expected lifetime emissions from all relevant products sold in the reporting year across the company's product portfolio. By doing so, the Scope 3 inventory accounts for a company's total GHG emissions associated with its activities in the reporting year. …

Companies may optionally include emissions associated with maintenance of sold products during use.

See section 5.6 for guidance on the applicability of category 11 to final products and intermediate products sold by the reporting company.

Companies may calculate emissions from category 11 without collecting data from customers or consumers.

Calculating emissions from category 11 typically requires product design specifications and assumptions about how consumers use products (e.g., use profiles, assumed product lifetimes, etc.). For more information, see Guidance for Calculating Scope 3 Emissions, available online at www.ghgprotocol.org. Companies are required to report a description of the methodologies and assumptions used to calculate emissions (see chapter 11).

Where relevant, companies should report additional information on product performance when reporting Scope 3 emissions in order to provide additional transparency on steps companies are taking to reduce GHG emissions from sold products. Such information may include GHG intensity metrics, energy intensity metrics, and annual emissions from the use of sold products (see section 11.3). See section 9.3 for guidance on recalculating base year emissions when methodologies or assumptions related to category 11 change over time.

Any claims of avoided emissions related to a company's sold products must be reported separately from the company's Scope 1, Scope 2, and Scope 3 inventories. (For more information, see section 9.5.)

The minimum boundary for Category 11, *Use of sold products*, emissions include the total lifetime emissions from the use of goods and services sold by the reporting entity during the reporting year. This includes the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of the end users (both consumers and business customers that use final products). It is possible to calculate emissions from the use of goods and services sold without data from customers or end users.

There are two types of emissions from the use of sold products: 1) direct use-phase emissions and 2) indirect use-phase emissions. A reporting entity is required to report direct use-phase emissions but reporting of indirect-use phase emissions is optional. The table below, which is based on table 5.8 of the *Scope 3 Standard*, provides examples of direct use-phase and indirect use-phase emissions.

Type of emissions	Product Type	Examples
Direct use-phase emissions **(Required)**	Products that directly consume energy (fuels or electricity) during use	Automobiles, aircraft, engines, motors, power plants, buildings, appliances, electronics, lighting, data centers, web-based software
	Fuels and feedstocks	Petroleum products, natural gas, coal, biofuels, crude oil
	GHGs and products that emit GHGs in use	CO_2, CH_4, N_2O, HFCs, PFCs, SF_6, refrigeration and air-conditioning equipment, industrial gases, fire extinguishers, fertilizers
Indirect use-phase emissions **(Optional)**	Products that indirectly consume energy (fuels or electricity) during use	Apparel (requires washing and drying), food (requires cooking and refrigeration), pots and pans (require heating), soaps and detergents (require heated water)

If a product requires energy to operate, the emissions associated with the consumption of that energy are direct use-phase emissions. For example, a washing machine requires electricity to operate. The emissions associated with the energy needed to power that washing machine are direct use-phase emissions. If a product does not directly require energy to operate, the emissions associate with any energy used are indirect use-phase emissions and are optional for reporting. For example, a shirt does not consume energy while it is being worn. However, if the consumer chooses to wash and dry the shirt to prolong the useful life, the washer and dryer will consume energy. The emissions associated with this energy consumption are indirect-use phase emissions.

Emissions associated with maintenance of sold products during use are also considered an optional activity and are not included in the minimum boundary.

A reporting entity may need product design specifications and must make assumptions about how end consumers use products and the expected life of the product to calculate emissions from the use of sold products. Any significant assumptions used are required to be disclosed.

How we see it

Since emissions are measured for the total lifetime of the sold product, companies that produce more durable products with longer lifetimes may appear to have higher emissions compared to an entity whose products have a shorter lifetime. To reduce the potential for emissions data to be misinterpreted, a reporting entity should consider reporting on other relevant information (e.g., emissions intensity metrics). The reporting of product lifetimes and relevant intensity metrics (e.g., annual emissions per product) may help demonstrate product performance over time.

5.8.3.1 Direct use-phase

The calculation methods for direct use-phase emissions vary according to product type (refer to the table above for the various product types and examples). A reporting entity that sells multiple products with similar use phases may group similar products and use average statistics for a product in that product group. For example, an automobile manufacturer may group vehicles based on fuel efficiency. The manufacturer may determine that all vehicles with a fuel efficiency greater than 30 miles per gallon have a high fuel efficiency and use the same use profile for all vehicles within that group.

In addition, if a reporting entity sells a product to an intermediate user that emits GHGs during use as part of the final product, the reporting entity is required to account for the direct use-phase emissions attributable to the intermediate product by the end user (the reporting entity is not required to account for the emissions of the entire final product). The indirect use-phase emissions of a sold intermediate product is an optional activity and is not included in the minimum boundary. If the end use of the final sold products is unknown, a reporting entity should disclose and justify the exclusion of all downstream emissions related to sold intermediate products.

5.8.3.1.1 Products that directly consume energy during use (updated June 2025)

Calculation method (direct use-phase)	
This method estimates emissions related to products that directly consume energy during use by multiplying the expected lifetime number of uses for a product by the total number of products sold and by an emissions factor per use (energy used per use multiplied by an emissions factor). See the formula below this chart for calculating emissions.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Total expected lifetime number of uses ▸ Quantities of products sold ▸ Fuel used, electricity consumed and/or refrigerant leakage per use of product	▸ Lifecycle emissions factors for fuels ▸ Lifecycle emissions factors for electricity ▸ GWP of refrigerants

The activity data can be obtained from sales records, internal data, surveys and industry associations. Emissions factors can be obtained from the GHG Protocol website, lifecycle databases and industry associations. A reporting entity may need to consider the region where the products are used, as factors such as electricity grid emissions factors or use patterns of a product can vary significantly by region.

Total lifetime expected uses **X** **Number of products sold in reporting year** **X** **Total fuel/electricity consumed or refrigerant leaked per use** **X** **Emissions factor for fuel/electricity or GWP** **=** **Emissions from products that directly consume energy during use**

The example below, which is based on example 11.1 of the Scope 3 Guidance illustrates how a reporting entity would apply this formula:

Illustration 5-6: Calculating direct-use phase emissions from produts that directly consume energy during use

Company A manufactures and sells appliances such as washing machines, dryers and irons. It collects data over the quantities sold using sales records and data over the total number of uses in a lifetime from surveys conducted by internal quality control teams. Data on electricity consumed per use and emissions factors is sourced from government data. Company A must calculate the total emissions for each product before calculating the total emissions from use of sold products.

Product	Total uses in lifetime		Number of products sold		Electricity consumed per use (kWh)		Electricity emissions factor (kg CO_2e per kWh)		Total emissions (kg CO_2e)
Washing machine	1,000	x	11,500	x	1.3	x	0.5	=	7,475,000
Dryer	1,100	x	1,900	x	1.5	x	0.5	=	1,567,500
Iron	2,000	x	20,000	x	0.2	x	0.5	=	4,000,000
									13,042,500

Company A's total direct use-phase emissions from products that directly consume energy for the reporting year is 13,042,500 kg CO_2e.

How we see it

The calculation of Scope 3 category 11 emissions for products that directly consume energy during their use differs from the calculation of Scope 2 emissions because the calculation of Scope 3 category 11 emissions is an estimate that requires assumptions about the end customers' usage (including the location of usage). As a result, the MBM used when calculating Scope 2 emissions will generally not be feasible for calculating Scope 3 category 11 emissions because the reporting entity will not have access to data regarding the customers' actual use. As a result, the use of EACs to reduce a reporting entity's calculation of the estimated lifetime emissions associated with the use of sold products is not currently an established practice for sustainability reporting under the GHG Protocol.

Entities who are able to gather the necessary data and meet the Scope 2 quality criteria must disclose their emissions calculation methodology, which should explicitly describe the use of EACs.

5.8.3.1.2 *Fuels and feedstocks*

Feedstocks are the starting materials used to make fuels, power and products (e.g. crude oil for producing plastic products).

Calculation method (direct use-phase)	
This method calculates emissions related to fuels and feedstocks by multiplying the total quantities of fuels/feedstocks sold by the combustion emissions factor for those fuels/feedstocks. Emissions should only be calculated if the feedstock is combusted during the use phase.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Total quantities of fuels/feedstocks sold	▸ Combustion emissions factors for fuels/feedstocks

Only the combustion emissions should be reported in category 11 (i.e., upstream emissions associated with the feedstock/fuel should not be reported in category 11). This avoids double counting as the upstream emissions associated with the production of the feedstock/fuel are included in the reporting entity's Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions, as well as other Scope 3 categories.

Potential data sources for activity data include sales records. Combustion emissions factors may be found in many international data sources. As emissions may vary based on the technology used and the exact fuel mix, a reporting entity should use the emissions factor most representative of their fuel.

5.8.3.1.3 GHGs and products that emit GHGs in use

Calculation method (direct use-phase)	
This method calculates emissions related to GHGs and products that emit GHGs during use by multiplying the total quantity of products sold by the percentage of GHGs released per unit of GHG contained in the product and by the GWP of the GHGs released. See the formula below this chart for calculating emissions.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Total quantities of products sold ▸ Quantities of GHGs contained per product ▸ Percentage of GHGs released throughout the lifetime of the product	▸ GWP of the GHGs contained in the product

Potential data sources for activity data include sales records and product design specifications. If the percentage of GHGs released during a product's lifetime is not known, then 100% should be assumed.

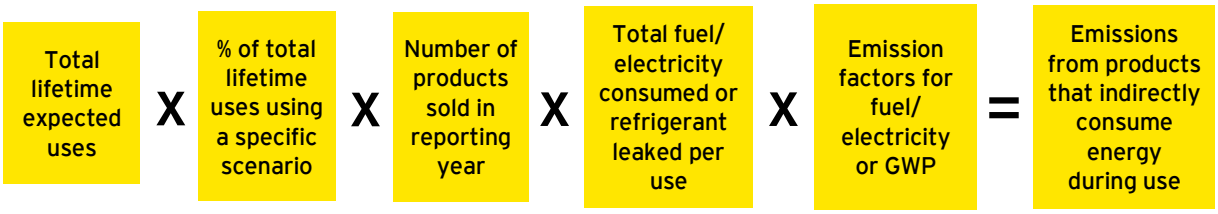
GHG contained in product X **Number of products sold in the reporting year** X **Percentage of GHGs released during lifetime use** X **GWP** = **Emissions from GHGs and products that emit GHGs in use**

5.8.3.2 Indirect use-phase

Indirect use-phase emissions are emissions for products that indirectly consume energy during use. Reporting of indirect use-phase emissions is optional. To calculate indirect use-phase emissions, a reporting entity develops or obtains a typical use-phase profile over the lifetime of the product and multiply that by the relevant emissions factors.

Calculation method (indirect use-phase)	
This method estimates emissions related to products that indirectly consume energy during use by multiplying a typical use-phase profile over the lifetime of the product (this can be either obtained or created by the entity) by relevant emissions factors. See the formula below this chart for calculating emissions.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Average number of uses over lifetime of product ▸ Average use scenarios ▸ Fuel used, electricity consumed, refrigerant leakage and/or GHGs emitted indirectly in use scenarios	▸ Combustion emissions factors of fuels and electricity

Products can consume different amounts of energy depending on how they are used (e.g., an article of clothing can be hand-washed and hung dry, washed and dried in a laundry machine or dry-cleaned). This may make the development of a typical use-phase more difficult, as it is important to develop a use profile that is representative of different use scenarios over the lifetime of the product. Sources for these use profiles include previous emissions and consumer studies, among others. A reporting entity may choose to identify several use-phase scenarios and create a weighted average based upon estimated activity.



The formula above would be used for each identified use-phase scenario, with the calculated emissions for each scenario added together to calculate the total indirect use phase emissions for the product.

5.8.4 Category 12: End-of-life treatment of sold products

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 5.5

Category 12: End-of-life treatment of sold products

This category includes emissions from the waste disposal and treatment of products sold by the reporting company (in the reporting year) at the end of their life.

This category includes the total expected end-of-life emissions from all products sold in the reporting year. (See section 5.4 for more information on the time boundary of Scope 3 categories.) End-of-life treatment methods (e.g. landfilling, incineration) are described in category 5 (Waste generated in operations). A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from end-of-life treatment of sold products include the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of waste management companies.

See section 5.6 for guidance on the applicability of category 12 to final products and intermediate products sold by the reporting company and box 5.6 for guidance on accounting for emissions from recycling, which applies to both category 5 and category 12. Calculating emissions from category 12 requires assumptions about the end-of-life treatment methods used by consumers. For more information, see Guidance for Calculating Scope 3 Emissions, available online at www.ghgprotocol.org. Companies are required to report a description of the methodologies and assumptions used to calculate emissions (see chapter 11).

Category 12, *End-of-life treatment of sold products*, emissions are emissions from the waste disposal and treatment of products sold by the reporting entity at the end of their life. These emissions are the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of waste management companies that occur during disposal or treatment of sold products and represent the minimum boundary for category 12. This category also includes emissions from recycling products at the end of their life. Refer to section 5.7.5.4 for guidance on reductions in emissions related to recycling. Calculating category 12 emissions requires assumptions about the end-of-life treatment methods used by consumers. If the product sold is not to the end user, reporting entities should account for the emissions of disposing of the intermediate product at the end of its life, not for disposing of the final transformed product.

The emissions from downstream end-of-life treatment of sold products can be calculated using the same methods as Category 5, *Waste generated in operations*, with one difference. Instead of calculating data on total mass of waste generated in operations, a reporting entity should collect data on total mass of sold products (including packaging) from the point of sale through the end of its life. See section 5.7.5 for a description of the methods used to calculate category 5 emissions as well as how a reporting entity should determine which method to use.

A reporting entity should collect data on the types and amounts of waste from the time it sells the products through the end-of-life disposal (including any packaging and any wasted products). Generally, total waste will equal the total products sold but can be lower in some cases, such as when the product is consumed, partially consumed (e.g., food and beverage) or combusted to generate energy. More and higher quality data may be available to a reporting entity for waste generated in its operations than for the waste generated from sold products. That is because the reporting entity may not know the waste-disposal the consumer uses, even if it knows the components of the product.

5.8.5 Category 13: Downstream leased assets (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

***Scope 3* Standard**

Chapter 5.5

Category 13: Downstream leased assets

This category includes emissions from the operation of assets that are owned by the reporting company (acting as lessor) and leased to other entities in the reporting year that are not already included in Scope 1 or Scope 2. This category is applicable to lessors (i.e., companies that receive payments from lessees). Companies that operate leased assets (i.e., lessees) should refer to category 8 (Upstream leased assets).

Leased assets may be included in a company's Scope 1 or Scope 2 inventory depending on the type of lease and the consolidation approach the company uses to define its organizational boundaries. (See section 5.2 for more information.) If the reporting company leases an asset for only part of the reporting year, the reporting company should account for emissions from the portion of the year that the asset was leased. See Appendix A for more information on accounting for emissions from leased assets.

In some cases, companies may not find value in distinguishing between products sold to customers (accounted for in category 11) and products leased to customers (accounted for in category 13). Companies may account for products leased to customers the same way the company accounts for products sold to customers (i.e., by accounting for the total expected lifetime emissions from all relevant products leased to other entities in the reporting year). In this case, companies should report emissions from leased products in category 11 (Use of sold products), rather than category 13 (Downstream leased assets) and avoid double counting between categories.

A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from downstream leased assets include the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of lessees (depending on the lessee's consolidation approach).

Category 13, *Downstream leased assets*, emissions are those from the operation of assets that are owned by the reporting entity and leased to other entities (i.e., the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of lessees of leased assets that are not in the reporting entity's organizational boundary and are the minimum boundary for category 13). Life cycle emissions associated with manufacturing or constructing leased assets are considered optional and not included in the minimum boundary. This category applies to lessors, so lessees should refer to Category 8, *Upstream leased assets*. Category 13 includes the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of lessees. If the reporting entity leased an asset for only part of the year, this category only includes the emissions from the asset in Scope 3 from the portion of the year that the asset was leased.

Leased assets owned by the reporting entity may be included in Scope 1 or Scope 2 emissions, depending on the type of lease and the consolidation approach used by the reporting entity. If the emissions from the leased assets are included in Scope 1 or Scope 2, the reporting entity should not also include the emissions from the leased asset in Scope 3. See section 2.5.5.1, *Leased assets*, for more information on determining when a lessor should include emissions from leased assets in Scope 1, Scope 2 or Scope 3, category 13 emissions.

A reporting entity that both sells and leases products may elect to account for emissions from leased assets as emissions from sold products (i.e., include all emissions from leased assets in Category 11, *Use of sold products*, instead of category 13). This may be the case if the reporting entity does not see value in distinguishing between emissions from products sold to customers and emissions from products leased to customers. In these cases, it is important to consider the specific circumstances of the product (e.g., whether the expected duration of the lease aligns with the expected life of the product).

The emissions from downstream leased assets can be calculated using the same methods as Category 8, *Upstream leased assets*. See section 5.7.8 for a description of those methods, as well as how a reporting entity should determine which method to use.

5.8.6 Category 14: Franchises (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

***Scope 3* Standard**

Chapter 5.5

Category 14: Franchises

This category includes emissions from the operation of franchises not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2. A franchise is a business operating under a license to sell or distribute another company's goods or services within a certain location. This category is applicable to franchisors (i.e., companies that grant licenses to other entities to sell or distribute its goods or services in return for payments, such as royalties for the use of trademarks and other services). Franchisors should account for emissions that occur from the operation of franchises (i.e., the Scope 1 and 2 emissions of franchisees) in this category.

Franchisees (i.e., companies that operate franchises and pay fees to a franchisor) should include emissions from operations under their control in this category if they have not included those emissions in Scope 1 and Scope 2 due to their choice of consolidation approach. Franchisees may optionally report upstream Scope 3 emissions associated with the franchisor's operations (i.e., the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of the franchisor) in category 1 (Purchased goods and services).

Category 14, *Franchises*, emissions are those from the operation of franchises. For a reporting entity that is a franchisor, the minimum boundary includes the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of a franchisee that occur during operation of the franchises. For a reporting entity that is a franchisee, the minimum boundary includes emissions from operations under the franchisee's control if those emissions are not already included in Scope 1 and Scope 2 due to the consolidation approach chosen. Life cycle emissions associated with manufacturing or constructing franchises are considered optional and not included in the minimum boundary.

A franchisee may elect to report Scope 1 and 2 emissions associated with the franchisor's operations within Scope 3, Category 1, *Purchased goods and services*, but is not required to do so.

A reporting entity may use either the franchise-specific method or the average-data method to calculate category 14 emissions. These methods are listed below in order of most to least precise.

How we see it

The definition of a franchise under the GHG Protocol may differ from the definition used for financial accounting and reporting. Some arrangements (e.g., certain licensing agreements) may qualify as a franchise under the GHG Protocol, based on the specifics of the arrangement. Entities should evaluate whether they have a franchise under the GHG Protocol, even if they have already performed this assessment for financial reporting purposes, because the conclusion may not be the same.

5.8.6.1 Franchise-specific method

Franchise-specific method	
This method calculates emissions related to franchises by obtaining Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions from franchisees (either using Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG inventory reports or by gathering site-specific fuel and energy use data).	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions data from franchisees ▸ Upstream Scope 3 emissions data from franchisees (if significant) ▸ Site-specific fuel use, electricity use and process and fugitive emissions activity data	▸ Site-specific or regional emissions factors for energy sources per unit of consumption (e.g., kgCO_2e/kWh for electricity) ▸ Emissions factors of process emissions and fugitive emissions (e.g., refrigeration) ▸ Upstream emissions factors

Potential data sources for activity data include public GHG inventory reports or, if such reports are not available, site-specific fuel and energy data from sources such as utility bills and meter readings.

If a franchisee provides goods or services outside of the franchise agreement, the reporting entity needs to allocate the emissions from these activities accordingly. Refer to section 5.9 for further discussion on allocated emissions.

A reporting entity may elect to use sampling techniques when it is not practical to collect data from all franchises due to the large number of individual franchises. In other cases, a reporting entity may choose to group franchises with similar anticipated emissions intensities for data collection. Some examples of ways to group franchises include by location (especially if electricity emissions factors differ significantly among different franchise locations), floor space, revenue, customers and product volume. See section 5.10 for more information on sampling.

5.8.6.2 Average-data method

Average-data method	
This method estimates emissions related to franchises by using average statistics (e.g., average emissions per building type or franchise type).	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Floor space of each franchise ▸ Number of franchises, by building type ▸ Number of franchise assets that give rise to GHG emissions (e.g., company cars)	▸ Average emissions factors by floor space, expressed in units of emissions per area per time period (e.g., kg CO_2e/ft^2/day) ▸ Average emissions factors by building type, expressed in units of emissions per building per time period (e.g., kg CO_2e/small office block/year) ▸ Emissions factors by asset type, expressed in units of emissions per area per time period (e.g., kg CO_2e/car/year)

The average-data method should be used when purchase records, electricity bills or meter readings of energy use are not available or applicable for franchisees.

5.8.7 Category 15: Investments

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

***Scope 3* Standard**

Chapter 5.5

Category 15: Investments

This category includes Scope 3 emissions associated with the reporting company's investments in the reporting year, not already included in Scope 1 or Scope 2. This category is applicable to investors (i.e., companies that make an investment with the objective of making a profit) and companies that provide financial services. Investments are categorized as a downstream Scope 3 category because the provision of capital or financing is a service provided by the reporting company.

Category 15 is designed primarily for private financial institutions (e.g., commercial banks), but is also relevant to public financial institutions (e.g., multilateral development banks, export credit agencies, etc.) and other entities with investments not included in Scope 1 and Scope 2.

Investments may be included in a company's Scope 1 or Scope 2 inventory depending on how the company defines its organizational boundaries. For example, companies that use the equity share approach include emissions from equity investments in Scope 1 and Scope 2. Companies that use a control approach account only for those equity investments that are under the company's control in Scope 1 and Scope 2. Investments not included in the company's Scope 1 or Scope 2 emissions are included in Scope 3, in this category. A reporting company's Scope 3 emissions from investments are the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of investees.

For purposes of GHG accounting, this standard divides financial investments into four types:

- Equity investments
- Debt investments
- Project Finance
- Managed investments and client services

Table 5.9 and table 5.10 provide GHG accounting guidance for each type of financial investment. Table 5.9 provides the types of investments included in the minimum boundary of this category. Table 5.10 identifies types of investments that companies may optionally report, in addition to those provided in table 5.9.

Emissions from investments should be allocated to the reporting company based on the reporting company's proportional share of investment in the investee. Because investment portfolios are dynamic and can change frequently throughout the reporting year, companies should identify investments by choosing a fixed point in time, such as December 31 of the reporting year, or using a representative average over the course of the reporting year.

Category 15, *Investments*, emissions are those from investments entered into by the reporting entity if it is either an investor (i.e., has made the investment with the objective of making a profit) or provides financial services when the reporting entity does not apply the equity share approach for its organizational boundary. Category 15 emissions are particularly relevant for banks and financial institutions due to their extensive investment portfolios. However, category 15 also applies to any company that has significant investments. These emissions are the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of the reporting entity's investees. A reporting entity reports emissions from investments based on the reporting entity's proportional share of the investment in the investee, using either a fixed point in time or a representative average over the course of the reporting year.

There are four types of financial investments included in the GHG Protocol: (1) equity investments, (2) debt investments, (3) project finance and (4) managed investments and client service. Certain types of investments are required to be reported within the GHG emissions inventory, while other types are optional and are not included in the minimum boundary. The illustration below, which is based on table 5.9 and table 5.10 of the *Scope 3 Standard,* describes each type of investment, when a reporting entity is required to report emissions from an investment (i.e., the minimum boundary) and when such reporting is optional.

Investment type	Description	GHG accounting approach
Equity investments	Equity investments where the reporting entity has financial control, significant influence or joint financial control (e.g., the reporting entity has at least 20% ownership, the investment is a joint venture where partners have joint financial control)	**Required** If the equity share approach is selected (see section 2.5.2 for guidance on the equity share approach) to determine the reporting entity's organizational boundaries, for each year of the investment, account for proportional share of investee's emissions as Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions. If either the operational control or financial control approach (see section 2.5.3) is used, and the reporting entity does not have control over the equity investments, for each year of the investment, account for proportional share of investee's emissions in category 15.
	Equity investments where the reporting entity has neither financial control nor significant influence (e.g., the reporting entity has less than 20% ownership)	**Required** For each year of the investment, account for proportional share of investee's emissions in category 15. A reporting entity may establish a threshold (e.g., equity share of 1%) below which investments are excluded from emissions reporting but must disclose what the threshold is and justify why it is appropriate.

Investment type	Description	GHG accounting approach
Debt investments	Corporate debt holdings, including corporate debt instruments or commercial loans, with known use of proceeds (i.e., the use of proceeds is identified for a particular project, such as to build a specific power plant)	**Required** For each year of the investment during the term of the investment, account for the proportional share of Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of relevant projects in category 15. If the reporting entity is the initial sponsor or lender of a relevant project, also account for the total projected lifetime Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of that project in the reporting year it is financed and report those emissions separately from Scope 3 emissions. These emissions are not reported again in subsequent years.
	General corporate purpose debt holdings (e.g., bonds or loans) where the use of proceeds is not specified	**Optional** A reporting entity may account for its proportionate share of investee's Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions that occur in the reporting year in category 15.
Project finance	Long-term financing of projects (e.g., industrial projects) as either an equity investor (sponsor) or debt investor (financier)	**Required** For each year of the investment during the term of the investment, account for the proportional share of Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of relevant projects in category 15. If the reporting entity is the initial sponsor or lender of a relevant project, also account for the total projected lifetime Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of that project in the reporting year it is financed and report those emissions separately from Scope 3 emissions. These emissions are not reported again in subsequent years.
Managed investments and client services	Investments managed on behalf of clients or services provided to clients (e.g., asset management services, financial advisory services)	**Optional** A reporting entity may account for emissions from managed investments and client services in category 15.

How we see it

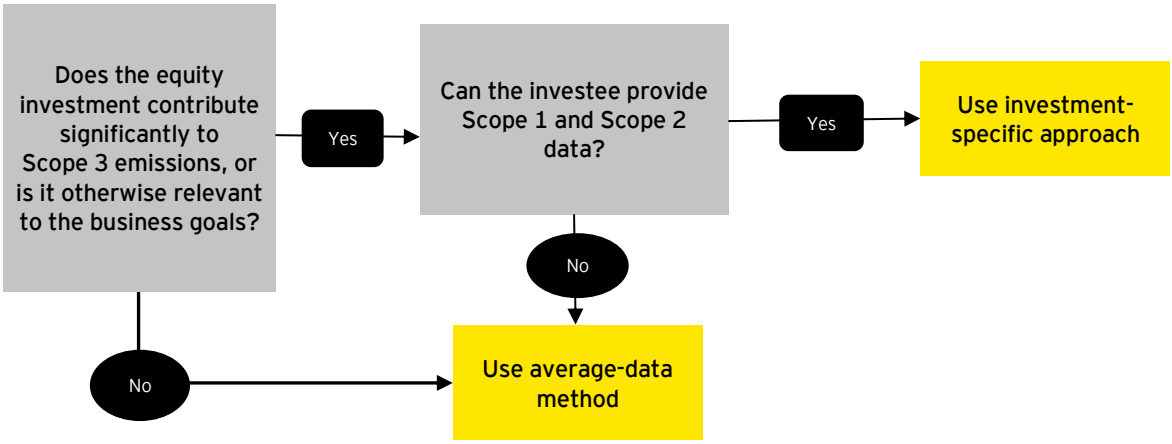
Because project financing may occur on an irregular basis, emissions from project finance may fluctuate significantly from year to year. Entities should disclose the projected lifetime emissions from project financing separately from Scope 3 emissions to maintain consistency of data across periods. Disclosure of projected lifetime emissions for projects financed also provides relevant information on the longer-term nature of the investments. Further, reporting these emissions separately from Scope 3 avoids double counting, as reporting entities will include proportional Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions from relevant projects each year throughout the term of the investment.

A reporting entity should determine which investments are likely to contribute most significantly to total GHG emissions before calculating emissions from investments. Financial services companies may have a large portfolio of investments, so it is recommended that reporting entities prioritize those with the highest emissions. The methods for calculating emissions from investments vary depending on the type of investment. The various types of investments and applicable calculation methods are listed below for all investment types that are required to be reported under the Scope 3 Standard. In addition, the Partnership for Carbon Accounting Financials[22] (PCAF) provides guidance for calculating GHG emissions from investments and is widely used in practice.

5.8.7.1 Equity investments

A reporting entity may use the investment-specific method or average-data method to calculate emissions from equity investments. These methods are listed below in order of most to least precise. The reporting entity should account for its proportional share of Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions (and, if significant compared to other sources of emissions, Scope 3 emissions) of the investments based on the proportional share of equity in the investee.

The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 15.1 of the Scope 3 Guidance, indicates which calculation method a reporting entity should select when calculating emissions from equity investments based on significance and information available.



5.8.7.1.1 Investment-specific method

Investment-specific method	
This method calculates Scope 3 emissions by obtaining Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions directly from investees and allocating the emissions based on the proportion of the reporting entity's equity share of the investment.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of investee (and, if significant in comparison to other sources of emissions, Scope 3 emissions) ▸ Reporting entity's proportional share of equity in the investee	▸ N/A – The reporting entity obtains emissions data directly from investees, so no emissions factors are required

[22] https://carbonaccountingfinancials.com/en/standard

The activity data may be obtained from GHG inventory reports of the investee and from financial records of the reporting entity. If an investee does not calculate its Scope 3 emissions, and if significant in comparison to other sources of emissions, a reporting entity may need to estimate them based on the average-data method.

5.8.7.1.2 Average-data method

Average-data method	
This method estimates emissions using EEIO data to estimate the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions associated with equity investments.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Revenue of the investee (broken down by sector if the investee operates in more than one sector) ▸ Reporting entity's proportional share of equity in the investee ▸ Sector(s) the investee operates in	▸ EEIO emissions factors for the sector(s) that the investee operates in (kg CO_2e/$ revenue)

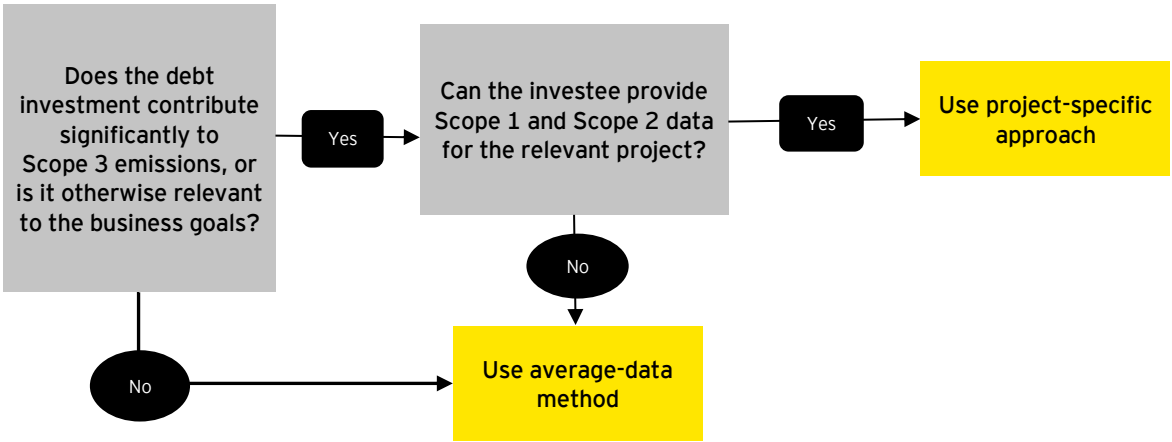
Revenue and equity share data can be obtained from the financial records of the investee and the reporting entity, respectively.

EEIO emissions factors may be obtained from EEIO databases available on the GHG Protocol website. As EEIO emissions factors include Scope 3 emissions, a reporting entity may want to disaggregate the EEIO emissions factor used to separate Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions if it is not including Scope 3 emissions of the investee (i.e., Scope 3 emissions are not significant compared to other sources of emissions). However, sufficient information to disaggregate the EEIO emissions factor may not be available. In those cases, a reporting entity should clearly disclose the boundary used for the category 15 emissions. Refer to section 5.5.2.1 for more information regarding the benefits and limitations of using EEIO emissions factors.

5.8.7.2 Debt investments with known use of proceeds and/or project finance

A reporting entity may use the project-specific method or average-data method to calculate emissions from debt investments (when the use of proceeds is known) or project finance. These methods are listed below in order of most to least precise. The reporting entity should account for the proportional Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions (and, if significant compared to other sources of emissions, Scope 3 emissions) of the investments based on the proportional share of total project costs.

The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 15.2 of the Scope 3 Guidance, indicates which calculation method a reporting entity should select when calculating emissions from debt investments with known use of proceeds and project finance based on significance and information available.



5.8.7.2.1 *Project-specific method*

Project-specific method	
This method calculates Scope 3 emissions by obtaining Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions directly from investees for the relevant project(s) and allocating the emissions based on the proportion of the reporting entity's share of total project costs.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions of the relevant projects (and, if significant in comparison to other sources of emissions, Scope 3 emissions) ▸ Reporting entity's proportional share of total project costs (total equity plus debt)	▸ N/A — The reporting entity collects emissions data directly from investees, so no emissions factors are required

The activity data may be obtained from GHG inventory reports of the investee for the relevant project and from financial records of the reporting entity. In addition, some regions have databases that are available to the public that contain GHG reporting for facilities over a certain size.

5.8.7.2.2 *Average-data method*

Average-data method	
This method estimates emissions using EEIO data to estimate the Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions associated with debt investments (when the use of proceeds is known) or project finance.	
Potential activity data used	**Potential emissions factors used**
▸ Project costs (if the project is in the construction phase) ▸ Revenue of the project (if the project is in the operational phase) ▸ Reporting entity's proportional share of total project costs (total equity plus debt)	▸ EEIO emissions factors for the relevant construction sector that the project is related to (kg CO_2e/$ revenue) (if the project is in the construction phase) ▸ EEIO emissions factors for the relevant sector that the investment is related to (kg CO_2e/$ revenue) (if the project is in the operational phase)

Project costs and share of those costs data can be obtained from the financial records of the investee and the reporting entity, respectively.

EEIO emissions factors may be obtained from EEIO databases available on the GHG Protocol website. As EEIO emissions factors include Scope 3 emissions, a reporting entity may want to disaggregate the EEIO emissions factor used to separate Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions if it is not including Scope 3 emissions of the project (i.e., Scope 3 emissions are not significant compared to other sources of emissions). However, sufficient information to disaggregate the EEIO emissions factor may not be available. In those cases, a reporting entity should clearly disclose the boundary used for the category 15 emissions. Refer to section 5.5.2.1 for more information regarding the benefits and limitations of using EEIO emissions factors.

In addition to the methods above, if a reporting entity is the initial lender of a relevant project, it should also account for the total projected lifetime Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions (and, if significant compared to other sources of emissions, Scope 3 emissions) of that project in the initial reporting year it is financed, separately from other Scope 3 emissions. Claims of avoided emissions related to the project are also required to be reported separately. A reporting entity will need to estimate the expected average annual emissions from the project as well as the expected lifetime of the project, but the details behind the data needed to calculate that information will vary depending on the type of project. If there is uncertainty around a project's anticipated lifetime, companies may report a range of likely values (e.g., a reporting entity may report a range of 30 to 60 years).

5.9 Allocation

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Guidance

Chapter 8

8.1 Overview of allocation

When companies use primary data from suppliers or other value chain partners to calculate *Scope 3* emissions (see section 7.4), companies may need to allocate emissions. Likewise, companies may need to allocate emissions when providing primary data to customers that are accounting for their *Scope 3* emissions.

Allocation is the process of partitioning GHG emissions from a single facility or other system[1] (*e.g.,* activity, vehicle, production line, business unit, etc.) among its various outputs (see figure 8.1).

When allocation is needed

Allocation is necessary when:

- a single facility or other system produces multiple outputs; and
- emissions are only quantified for the entire facility or system as a whole

…

When allocation is not needed

When using primary data, allocation is not necessary if:

- a facility or other system produces only one output; or
- emissions from producing each output are separately quantified

Allocation is not typically necessary when using secondary data to calculate *Scope 3* emissions, since the activity data and emission factors are typically in reference to a single product (*e.g.,* calculating emissions from third-party transportation by multiplying weight-distance traveled by an emission factor)

A reporting entity may need to allocate emissions for the following reasons:

- The reporting entity uses primary data from suppliers that is not specific enough to calculate Scope 3 emissions.
- The reporting entity provides primary data to customers about a specific asset, who use that data to calculate their Scope 3 emissions.

If activity data to calculate Scope 3 emissions is needed at a product or good or service level and is collected at an aggregated level (e.g., facility, process or supplier level), it is necessary to allocate GHG emissions from the aggregated level to the individual outputs (e.g., products).

A reporting entity should only calculate allocated emissions when more accurate data is not available. Because the process of allocation involves estimating the portion of the emissions of a facility, process or system that are attributable to a single output, it results in additional estimation uncertainty in the emissions calculation and may be inaccurate if the various outputs differ significantly in their emissions intensity. Allocated emissions should not be used in the following circumstances:

- GHG data can be provided for the specific product purchased.
- Activity data can be separately sub-metered for each output.
- Engineering models can be used to estimate the activity data for each output.

How we see it

In each of these circumstances the data provided should be of high quality. If the data listed above is available but is not of sufficient quality, then allocation may still be preferred.

In some cases, a supplier may supply pre-allocated emissions data because it does not require the supplier to report confidential business information.

5.9.1 Allocation methods

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

***Scope 3* Guidance**

Chapter 8

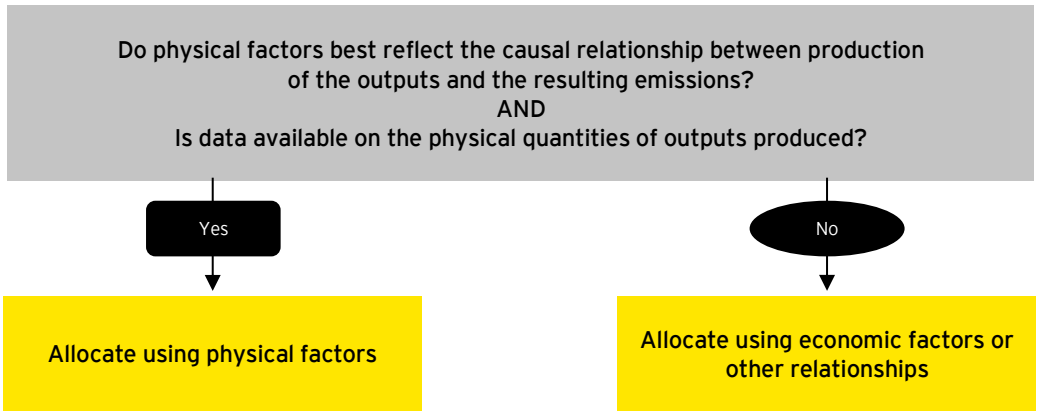
8.3 Allocation methods

If avoiding allocation is not possible, companies should first determine total facility or system emissions, then determine the most appropriate method and factor for allocating emissions. (See table 8.1 for a list of allocation methods and factors.)

As a general rule, companies should follow the decision tree in figure 8.2 when deciding if allocation is needed and selecting an allocation method. However, the most appropriate allocation method for a given activity depends on individual circumstances (see section 8.4 for examples). Companies should select the allocation approach that:

- best reflects the causal relationship between the production of the outputs and the resulting emissions
- results in the most accurate and credible emissions estimates
- best supports effective decision-making and GHG reduction activities; and
- otherwise adheres to the principles of relevance, accuracy, completeness, consistency and transparency

If allocation cannot be avoided, a reporting entity should select an allocation method that yields the most accurate results. The flowchart below, which is based on Figure 8.2 of the Scope 3 Standard, provides a decision tree for determining which allocation method to use.



When possible, reporting entities should use physical factors to allocate emissions instead of economic factors since allocating based on economic factors is more likely to yield misleading estimates (e.g., when prices change significantly or frequently over time). Once an allocation method is chosen, a reporting

entity should calculate allocated emissions by first calculating its purchases as a percentage of total production (i.e., the amount purchased by the reporting entity divided by the total amount produced by the facility), then multiplying that percentage by the total emissions from the facility or system.

The chart below, which is based on table 8.1 in the Scope 3 Standard, provides an example formula for the physical and economic allocation methods.

Allocation method	Examples of formulas
Physical allocation	$\frac{\text{Number of units* purchased}}{\text{Total number of units* produced}}$ x Total emissions * Other examples of physical allocation factors include mass, volume, energy content and chemical content of products purchased
Economic allocation	$\frac{\text{Market value of products purchased}}{\text{Total market value of products produced}}$ x Total emissions

A reporting entity may use a combination of allocation methods. However, a reporting entity should use the same allocation method to allocate the emissions from a single individual facility or system. The sum of the allocated emissions for each output of a facility or system should equal 100% of the emissions from the facility or system. For example, a reporting entity purchases inventory from Supplier A and Supplier B. The reporting entity uses the physical allocation method to allocate Scope 3 emissions to products purchased from Supplier A, specifically using number of units as the allocation factor. The reporting entity must use this same formula for all products purchased from Supplier A but may use a different allocation method for products purchased from Supplier B.

The chart below, which is based on table 8.2 of the Scope 3 Standard, provides the allocation method that can be used for each category of Scope 3 emissions.

Category	Examples of primary data that is allocated	Allocation method
1. Purchased goods and services	▸ Site-specific energy use or emissions data from suppliers	▸ Physical or economic allocation
2. Capital goods	▸ Site-specific energy use or emissions data from capital goods suppliers	▸ Physical or economic allocation
3. Fuel and energy related activities	▸ Entity-specific data on upstream emissions ▸ Actual power purchase data for purchased power	▸ Physical allocation (energy)
4. Upstream transportation and distribution	▸ Activity-specific energy use or emissions data from third-party transportation and distribution suppliers	▸ Physical allocation (mass or volume) for shared vehicles ▸ Physical allocation (volume or area) for shared facilities
5. Waste generated in operations	▸ Site-specific emissions data from waste management companies	▸ Physical or economic allocation
6. Business travel	▸ Activity-specific emissions data from transportation suppliers (e.g., airlines)	▸ Physical allocation for shared vehicles (e.g., area occupied)
7. Employee commuting	▸ Specific distance traveled and mode of transportation collected from employees	▸ Physical allocation for shared vehicles (e.g., area occupied)
8. Upstream leased assets	▸ Site-specific energy use data collected by utility bills or meters	▸ Physical allocation for shared facilities (e.g., area or volume)
9. Downstream transportation and distribution	▸ Activity-specific energy use or emissions data from third-party transportation and distribution partners	▸ Physical allocation for shared vehicles (mass or volume) ▸ Physical allocation for shared facilities (volume or area)

Category	Examples of primary data that is allocated	Allocation method
10. Processing of sold products	▸ Site-specific energy use or emissions from downstream value chain partners	▸ Physical or economic allocation
11. Use of sold products	▸ Specific data collected from consumers	▸ Physical allocation, where applicable
12. End-of-life treatment of sold products	▸ Specific data collected from waste management providers on emissions rates or energy use	▸ Physical allocation, where applicable
13. Downstream leased assets	▸ Site-specific energy use data collected by utility bills or meters	▸ Physical allocation for shared facilities (volume or area)
14. Franchises	▸ Site-specific energy use data collected by utility bills or meters	▸ Physical allocation for shared facilities (volume or area)
15. Investments	▸ Site-specific energy use or emissions data	▸ Economic allocation based on the entity's proportional share of equity or debt in the investee

5.10 Sampling (updated October 2025)

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 3 Guidance

Appendix A: Sampling

A company needing to collect a large quantity of data for a particular *Scope 3* category may find it impractical or impossible to collect the data from each activity in the category. In such cases, companies may use appropriate sampling techniques to extrapolate data from a representative sample of activities within the category.

At times, a reporting entity may not be able to collect all of the necessary data for each activity in a Scope 3 category due to the large amount of data involved (e.g., a large retailer with many suppliers) or when data is unavailable (e.g., a supplier does not have a process in place to calculate its own GHG emissions). In these cases, appropriate sampling methods can be used to extrapolate data from a representative sample of activities within the category. For example, a reporting entity with many employees may choose to extrapolate data from a representative sample of employees when collecting data on employee commuting. Any significant assumptions used during the sampling process are required to be disclosed.

A reporting entity may also want to group similar activities (e.g., based on similar emissions intensities) together for data collection. For example, a reporting entity with many leased vehicles may group them by vehicle type and obtain data for that vehicle type.

5.10.1 Sampling methods

A reporting entity should choose the sampling method that best aligns with its business goals and accurately represents all emissions sources in the Scope 3 category. In some cases, the sampling method selected may depend on the availability and representativeness of the data. Each sampling method has unique benefits and disadvantages, so reporting entities need to consider which method is best suited to each specific emissions activity and justify and disclose their choice. Sampling methods described in the Scope 3 Guidance include:

- Simple random sampling
- Systematic sampling
- Stratified sampling

Other sampling methods that are not listed in the Scope 3 Guidance may also be used. The chart below lists the benefits and disadvantages of each method listed in the Scope 3 Guidance.

Sampling method	Advantages	Disadvantages
Simple random sampling: Randomly selecting activities (the sample) from a larger set of activities (the population)	Creates a representative view of the whole population (if the sample size is appropriate) Relatively straightforward	Sample size necessary to be representative may be prohibitively large Compiling the population from which to select the sample may be difficult
Systematic sampling: Randomly selecting the first item to sample, then selecting subsequent activities at regular intervals based on a sampling interval	Simple to implement Population is guaranteed to be evenly sampled (no risk that sample points are clustered together)	Periodic patterns in the population could lead to biased sampling Compiling the population from which to select the sample may be difficult
Stratified sampling: Grouping activities into categories with characteristics that result in similar GHG emissions intensities, then randomly sampling from within the homogeneous groups	Higher precision because there is less variability within the homogeneous groups Smaller sample sizes needed due to lower variability within the homogeneous groups	Forming sampling groups may be difficult and complex

The purpose of sampling is to balance the tradeoff between the cost of obtaining emissions data and accurately representing all emission sources in the Scope 3 category. This trade-off also affects the sampling method selected.

A reporting entity may use different sampling methods for each specific emissions activity.

5.10.2 Sample size

The sample size should be determined based on the population size, desired level of precision and confidence level (e.g., significance of GHG emissions from the population) and the variability of the population. A larger sample size will increase the level of accuracy and decrease the level of estimation uncertainty. In addition, more variability within the population will require larger sample sizes. The table below describes four of the possible approaches to determine sample size.

Approach	Description
Using the sample size of a similar inventory	A reporting entity may refer to similar inventories to benchmark an appropriate sample size and sampling method, but the reporting entity should justify the similarity and appropriateness for the inventory comparison.
Using online calculators	A reporting entity may use an online calculator, which is generally easy to access and use and many have options to customize the sampling criteria.
Using published tables	A reporting entity may refer to published tables that match its specific set of sampling criteria (e.g., precision, confidence levels).
Using formulas	A reporting entity may refer to established formulas, which often provide greater assurance and can be found in sampling textbooks as well as online.

5.11 Scope 3 disclosures

A reporting entity is not required to report Scope 3 emissions under the GHG Protocol Corporate Standard, but it may report some, but not all, relevant Scope 3 emissions from certain activities or Scope 3 categories it chooses under that standard. However, if a reporting entity reports in accordance with the GHG Protocol Corporate Standard and the Scope 3 Standard, it is required to report all relevant categories of Scope 3 emissions that are identified by the Scope 3 Standard. See section 1.5, *How to apply the Corporate Standard, Scope 2 Guidance and Scope 3 Standard*, on reporting Scope 3 emissions and the relationship between the Corporate Standard and the Scope 3 Standard. A reporting entity may also be required to report its Scope 3 emissions (or specific categories of Scope 3 emissions) using the GHG Protocol (or a different reporting framework) due to regulatory requirements.

The Corporate Standard and Scope 2 Guidance provide certain required, recommended and optional disclosures for Scope 3 emissions. Additionally, the Scope 3 Standard provides incremental required, recommended and optional disclosures for Scope 3 emissions. The required, recommended and optional disclosures from each of these standards overlap and may not be described precisely the same within each respective Standard and Guidance. However, we believe the intent of the overlapping disclosures is generally the same when a reporting entity elects to report under both the Corporate Standard and the Scope 3 Standard.

The sections below provide an overview of the required and optional disclosures within the GHG Protocol. Both sets of required disclosures (section 5.11.1) must be followed for the information to be presented in accordance with the GHG Protocol. Optional and recommended (sections 5.11.2 and 5.11.3) disclosures do not have to be included in the sustainability report for it to be presented in accordance with the GHG Protocol. Appendix A includes a disclosure checklist with a comprehensive list of all required, recommended and optional disclosures established by the GHG Protocol.

5.11.1 Required disclosures

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 9

Description of the company and inventory boundary

- An outline of the operational boundaries chosen, and if Scope 3 is included, a list specifying which types of activities are covered.

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 11

11.1 Required information [EY Note: Certain required general disclosures are not included in this excerpt but are included in Chapter 6]:

- Total Scope 3 emissions reported separately by Scope 3 category
- For each Scope 3 category, total emissions of GHGs (CO_2, CH_4, N_2O, HFCs, PFCs, and SF_6) reported in metric tons of CO_2 equivalent, excluding biogenic CO_2 emissions and independent of any GHG trades, such as purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances
- A list of Scope 3 categories and activities included in the inventory
- A list of Scope 3 categories or activities excluded from the inventory with justification of their exclusion

- For each Scope 3 category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately
- For each Scope 3 category, a description of the types and sources of data, including activity data, emission factors and GWP values, used to calculate emissions, and a description of the data quality of reported emissions data
- For each Scope 3 category, a description of the methodologies, allocation methods, and assumptions used to calculate Scope 3 emissions
- For each Scope 3 category, the percentage of emissions calculated using data obtained from suppliers or other value chain partners

[EY note: The Corporate Standard initially included only six GHGs. However, the Corporate Standard was amended in 2013 to add NF_3 as a seventh GHG for disclosure under the GHG Protocol.]

In addition to the disclosures listed in the Scope 3 Standard, we believe that a reporting entity should disclose a description of any emissions included in the reported Scope 3 category that are outside of the minimum boundary for that category.

The Scope 3 Standard is explicit in the disclosure requirements for each Scope 3 category, while the Corporate Standard implies certain disclosure requirements related to Scope 3. The extent of Scope 3 disclosures required depends on the stated GHG criteria elected by a reporting entity. As discussed in sections 1.5 and 5.11, when a reporting entity chooses to disclose only certain of the applicable Scope 3 categories, it references the GHG Protocol Corporate Standard and the Scope 3 Guidance as the stated criteria. However, when a reporting entity reports emissions associated with all relevant Scope 3 categories, the stated criteria is the Corporate Standard, the Scope 3 Standard and the Scope 3 Guidance.

When the Corporate Standard is the criteria, it outlines the minimum disclosures a reporting entity would need to make related to its Scope 3 emissions. However, we believe that the disclosures related to each of the Scope 3 categories, whether the entity is reporting some but not all relevant categories (Corporate Standard) or all relevant categories (Scope 3 Standard), should be the same and in line with the category-specific disclosures outlined by the Scope 3 Standard to provide report users with consistent context regarding reported Scope 3 emissions.

How we see it

We believe an entity that is reporting on Scope 3 emissions by activity under the Corporate Standard should disclose the activities included in the reported emissions, follow the disclosure requirements as described by the Corporate Standard and consider whether additional information, such as that outlined by the Scope 3 Standard disclosure requirements, should be added to provide transparency and appropriate context to report users.

5.11.2 Recommended disclosures

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 7

7.2 Recommended disclosures

Basis for upstream Scope 3. The reporting entity should identify which methodology has been used to calculate and report Scope 3, category 3—upstream energy emissions not recorded in Scope 1 and 2, Scope 3.

In addition to disclosing which methodology has been used for Scope 3 category 3, we believe that a reporting entity that is provided MBM values by their suppliers for any Scope 3 categories should disclose that the MBM was used for that category.

Although the recommended disclosures are not required by the GHG Protocol, they should be made if the reporting entity determines excluding such disclosures would make the presentation of the GHG emissions misleading.

5.11.3 Optional disclosures

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 9

Information on emissions and performance

- Emissions data from relevant Scope 3 emissions activities for which reliable data can be obtained.

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 11

11.2 Optional information [EY Note: Certain optional general disclosures are not included in this excerpt but are included in Chapter 6]:

A public GHG emissions report should include, when applicable, the following additional information:

- Emissions data further subdivided where this adds relevance and transparency (e.g., by business unit, facility, country, source type, activity type, etc.)
- Emissions data further disaggregated within Scope 3 categories where this adds relevance and transparency (e.g., reporting by different types of purchased materials within category 1, or different types of sold products within category 11)
- Emissions from Scope 3 activities not included in the list of Scope 3 categories (e.g., transportation of attendees to conferences/events), reported separately (e.g., in an "other" Scope 3 category)
- Emissions of GHGs reported in metric tons of each individual gas
- Emissions of any GHGs other than CO_2, CH_4, N_2O, HFCs, PFCs, and SF_6 whose 100-year GWP values have been identified by the IPCC to the extent they are emitted in the company's value chain (e.g., CFCs, HCFCs, NF_3, NOX, etc.) and a list of any additional GHGs included in the inventory
- Historic Scope 3 emissions that have previously occurred, reported separately from future Scope 3 emissions expected to occur as a result of the reporting company's activities in the reporting year (e.g., from Waste generated in operations, Use of sold products, End-of-life treatment of sold products)

Certain optional general disclosures are not included in this excerpt but are included in Chapter 6.

Although the optional disclosures are not required by the GHG Protocol, they should be made if the reporting entity determines excluding such disclosures would make the presentation of the GHG emissions misleading. We believe that when a reporting entity elects to disclose emissions from activities not included in the list of Scope 3 categories included in the Scope 3 Standard and Guidance, it should disclose the same information about the activity as is required for the identified categories of Scope 3 emissions. These disclosures include:

- A description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies), including a reference or link to any calculation tools used

- A description of the data sources used (e.g., to the extent material, actual activity data vs. estimated activity data)
- References to the emissions factors used
- A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation

5.11.4 Scope 3 reporting requirements from the California climate laws, ESRS and ISSB standards (updated June 2025)

California SB-253 requires reporting entities that had more than $1 billion in annual revenue in the previous fiscal year and do business in California to annually disclose their Scope 3 emissions in accordance with the GHG Protocol. These disclosures should be made in metric tons of CO_2e in total and disaggregated by each Scope 3 category. California SB-261 does not require disclosure of Scope 3 emissions.

The ESRS require entities to disclose Scope 3 emissions from each significant Scope 3 category, subject to the general materiality thresholds, and only disclose an intensity metric for their total emissions of all three scopes.

The ISSB standards require entities to disclose material Scope 3 emissions, subject to the general materiality assessment based on the definition included in the standards. An entity is required to disclose the categories of upstream or downstream activities from the GHG Protocol that are included in the Scope 3 emissions calculation. Entities participating in financial activities, including commercial and investment banks, asset managers and insurance entities are required to report on financed emissions as part of their Scope 3 emission reporting. Although the ISSB standards require an entity to measure its emissions in accordance with the Corporate Standard, they do not require an entity to measure Scope 3 emissions in accordance with the Scope 3 Standard. An entity is only required to refer to the Scope 3 Standard for the 15 different categories of upstream and downstream activities to determine which are relevant for disclosure. The ISSB standards provide certain relief to address practical challenges of disclosing Scope 3 emissions. This includes allowing, under certain conditions, an entity to measure its Scope 3 emissions using information from entities in its value chain with reporting cycles that are not aligned with the entity's reporting period and providing a temporary exemption for disclosing Scope 3 emissions for one year in the first annual reporting period in which an entity applies IFRS S2, *Climate-related Disclosures*. In addition, an entity may use only reasonable and supportable information that is available at the reporting date without undue cost or effort in measuring its Scope 3 emissions. An entity is also required to disclose the extent to which Scope 3 emissions are measured using verified inputs.

6 General disclosures

The Corporate Standard, Scope 2 Guidance and Scope 3 Standard include required, recommended and optional disclosures for Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions (see sections 3.4, 4.6 and 5.3 of this publication, respectively). The Corporate Standard, Scope 2 Guidance and Scope 3 Standard also include required and optional disclosures that do not directly relate to the amount of GHGs emitted in each scope, which are presented in this chapter. The required and optional disclosures from each of these standards often overlap and may not be described, within each respective standard and guidance, precisely the same. However, we believe the intent of the disclosures is generally the same. The sections below provide an overview of the required and optional general disclosures within the GHG Protocol. Appendix C of this publication includes a disclosure checklist with a comprehensive list of all required, recommended and optional disclosures established by the GHG Protocol.

6.1 Required disclosures

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 9

Required information

A public GHG emissions report that is in accordance with the GHG Protocol Corporate Standard shall include the following information:

Description of the company and inventory boundary

- An outline of the organizational boundaries chosen, including the chosen consolidation approach.
- An outline of the operational boundaries chosen, and if Scope 3 is included, a list specifying which types of activities are covered.
- The reporting period covered.

Information on emissions

- Year chosen as base year, and an emissions profile over time that is consistent with and clarifies the chosen policy for making base year emissions recalculations.
- Appropriate context for any significant emissions changes that trigger base year emissions recalculation (acquisitions/divestitures, outsourcing/insourcing, changes in reporting boundaries or calculation methodologies, etc.).
- Any specific exclusions of sources, facilities, and/or operations.

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 7

Base-year information

Companies shall disclose the year chosen as the base year; the method used to calculate the base year's Scope 2 emissions; whether historic location-based data is used as a proxy for a market-based method; and the context for any significant emission changes that trigger base-year emissions recalculation (acquisitions/divestitures, outsourcing/insourcing, changes in reporting boundaries or calculation methodologies, etc.)

Disclose basis for goal setting

If a company sets a corporate inventory reduction goal and/or a Scope 2-specific reduction goal, the company shall clarify whether the goal is based on the location-based method total or market-based method total.

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 11

11.1 Required Information

Companies shall publicly report the following information: [EY note: Required disclosures related to Scopes 1, 2, and 3 omitted from this excerpt]

- Once a base year has been established: the year chosen as the Scope 3 base year; the rationale for choosing the base year; the base year emissions recalculation policy; Scope 3 emissions by category in the base year, consistent with the base year emissions recalculation policy; and appropriate context for any significant emissions changes that triggered base year emissions recalculations

Certain required disclosures related to Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 are omitted from the excerpts above but are included and discussed in chapters 3, 4 and 5 of this publication, respectively.

A reporting entity is required to make certain disclosures that provide general information about the reporting entity, including information on the inventory boundary (including the consolidation approach) and the reporting period covered. In many cases, the disclosure of the reporting period is met by including headings in the report (e.g., "Statements of GHG emissions for the year ended 12/31/2X"). Otherwise, separate disclosure is required.

A reporting entity is also required to disclose information about its base year. This required information includes:

- The year chosen as the base year and reasons for choosing that year
- A discussion of the policy for base-year recalculations and any significance threshold applied
- Context for any significant emissions changes that have triggered a base-year emissions recalculation, such as structural changes (i.e., mergers, acquisitions, divestitures, outsourcing and insourcing of emitting activities), changes in reporting boundaries, changes in calculation methodology or improvements in the accuracy of emissions factors or activity data (see section 2.7.2 above for discussion of updating base years)
- Emissions for the identified base year that are calculated in accordance with the entity's base year recalculation policy
- The method used to calculate the base year's Scope 2 emissions
- If an MBM is used to calculate the base year's Scope 2 emissions, whether location-based data is used as a proxy for an MBM due to a lack of availability of Scope 2 MBM base year data

As described in section 2.7 above, a reporting entity is required to establish and report on a base year for Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions regardless of if Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions targets have been set, but it is not required to set a base year for Scope 3 emissions unless it tracks Scope 3 performance over time or sets a Scope 3 reduction target. If Scope 3 emissions are included for the base year, a reporting entity must disclose Scope 3 emissions by category in the base year.

If the reporting entity has a goal related to its base-year emissions, we believe the entity should disclose the goal and annual progress against the goal to not be misleading.

The following example illustrates the required disclosures about a reporting entity's base year.

Illustration 6-1: Disclosure of base year information

Company A prepares a sustainability report that includes GHG emissions presented in accordance with the GHG Protocol. Company A has set a reduction target for Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions and selected a base year of 202X for each scope. The base year information was disclosed in a prior report. Company A acquired an entity during the current year and recalculated its current- and base-year information to reflect this acquisition.

Company A disclosed the following information related to the base year within its report (this example does not include disclosures related to the current year information):

GHG emissions by scope (in metric tons of CO_2e)	202X (base year, as amended)
Scope 1	2,025
Scope 2	750
Scope 3	3,120
Total	5,895

The Company has identified 202X as the base year for all scopes because verifiable emissions data was available and the measurements against 202X are meaningful to the science-based initiative targets select by Company A for Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3. Emissions data is assessed against data from the base year to track and communicate performance.

The emissions base year is subject to recalculation in response to material changes, including changes in calculation methodology, changes due to data accuracy and structural changes, such as acquisitions or divestitures, and material changes in the identified boundaries. Company A has set a significance threshold of 5% of the sum of base-year Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions for updating base year emissions. Scope 2 base-year emissions are calculated using the market-based method. In 10% of the markets we operate in, market-based emissions factor information is not applicable or available, so data from the location-based method is used to represent emissions in those markets.

In the current year, Company A acquired Company Y. Management assessed the impact of this acquisition on our previously reported emissions and determined that the impact of this acquisition exceeded our significance threshold for base year recalculations. As such, we recalculated the 20X2 emissions presented in the current year report to include operations of Company Y for the full year. The operations of Company Y are also included in the current-year information presented in this report.

Any exclusions of emissions data from sources, facilities or operations must be disclosed and justified.

6.2 Optional disclosures

Although the optional disclosures are not required by the GHG Protocol, the disclosures should be made if the reporting entity determines excluding such disclosures would make the presentation of the GHG emissions misleading.

Excerpt from GHG Protocol

Corporate Standard

Chapter 9

Optional information

A public GHG emissions report should include, when applicable, the following additional information:

Information on emissions and performance

- A description of performance measured against internal and external benchmarks.
- Relevant ratio performance indicators (e.g. emissions per kilowatt-hour generated, tonne of material production, or sales).
- An outline of any GHG management/reduction programs or strategies.
- Information on any contractual provisions addressing GHG-related risks and obligations.
- An outline of any external assurance provided and a copy of any verification statement, if applicable, of the reported emissions data.
- Information on the causes of emissions changes that did not trigger a base year emissions recalculation (e.g., process changes, efficiency improvements, plant closures).
- GHG emissions data for all years between the base year and the reporting year (including details of and reasons for recalculations, if appropriate)
- Information on the quality of the inventory (e.g., information on the causes and magnitude of uncertainties in emission estimates) and an outline of policies in place to improve inventory quality. (see chapter 8).
- Information on any GHG sequestration.
- A list of facilities included in the inventory.
- A contact person.

Information on offsets

- Information on offsets that have been purchased or developed outside the inventory boundary, subdivided by GHG storage/removals and emissions reduction projects. Specify if the offsets are verified/certified (see chapter 8) and/or approved by an external GHG program (e.g., the Clean Development Mechanism, Joint Implementation).
- Information on reductions at sources inside the inventory boundary that have been sold/transferred as offsets to a third party. Specify if the reduction has been verified/certified and/or approved by an external GHG program (see chapter 8).

Scope 2 Guidance

Chapter 7

Scope 2 quality criteria.

- Companies **may** provide a reference to an internal or external third-party assurance process, or assurance of conformance provided by a certification program, supplier label, green power program, etc. An attestation form may be used to describe the chain of custody of purchased certificates or other contractual instruments.

Avoided emissions estimation. Consistent with Chapter 8 of the Corporate Standard, companies **may** separately report an estimation of GHG emissions avoided from a project or action (also see Section 6.9). This quantification should be based on project-level accounting, with methodologies and assumptions documented (including to what the reduction is being compared). See the GHG Project Protocol and GHG Protocol Guidelines for Grid-Connected Electricity Projects for example methodologies.

Scope 3 Standard

Chapter 11

11.2 Optional information

A public GHG emissions report should include, when applicable, the following additional information:

- Qualitative information about emission sources not quantified
- Information on any GHG sequestration or removals, reported separately from Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions
- Information on project-based GHG reductions calculated using the project method (e.g., using the GHG Protocol for Project Accounting), reported separately from Scope 1, Scope 2, and Scope 3 emissions
- Information on avoided emissions (e.g., from the use of sold products), reported separately from Scope 1, Scope 2, and Scope 3 emissions
- Quantitative assessments of data quality
- Information on inventory uncertainty (e.g., information on the causes and magnitude of uncertainties in emission estimates) and an outline of policies in place to improve inventory quality
- The type of assurance performed (first or third party), the relevant competencies of the assurance provider(s), and the opinion issued by the assurance provider
- Relevant performance indicators and intensity ratios Information on the company's GHG management and reduction activities, including Scope 3 reduction targets, supplier engagement strategies, product GHG reduction initiatives, etc.
- Information on supplier/partner engagement and performance
- Information on product performance
- A description of performance measured against internal and external benchmarks
- Information on purchases of GHG reduction instruments, such as emissions allowances and offsets, from outside the inventory boundary
- Information on reductions at sources inside the inventory boundary that have been sold/transferred as offsets to a third party
- Information on any contractual provisions addressing GHG-related risks or obligations
- Information on the causes of emissions changes that did not trigger a Scope 3 base year emissions recalculation
- GHG emissions data for all years between the Scope 3 base year and the reporting year (including details of and reasons for recalculations, if appropriate)
- Additional explanations to provide context to the data

Certain required disclosures included in the GHG Protocol are omitted from the excerpt above but are included and discussed in section 6.1 of this publication.

The GHG Protocol includes several optional disclosures about the reporting entity's performance and strategies that would provide users of the sustainability information with insight on how well the reporting entity is managing its emissions and its plans to further reduce emissions.

In addition to the required disclosures on inventory boundary described in section 6.1 above, a reporting entity may disclose a list of the facilities that are included in the reported emissions inventory. A reporting entity may have contracts that address GHG-related risks and obligations (e.g., a joint operation may have a contract that specifies how the ownership of emissions or the responsibility for managing emissions and associated risk is distributed between the parties involved in the joint operation). In these cases, the reporting entity may disclose information about the contractual provisions that address GHG-related risks and obligations.

The Scope 3 Standard includes an optional disclosure on qualitative information about any emission sources that are not quantified and included in the reported emissions. We believe this optional disclosure should also apply to any excluded Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions.

The GHG Protocol also includes optional disclosures about the base year. If there are any significant emissions changes in the current year that have not triggered base year recalculations (e.g., process changes, efficiency improvements, organic structural growth (e.g., opening newly constructed facilities) or decline (e.g., facilities closures)), a reporting entity may disclose the causes of these changes. A reporting entity may also disclose emissions data for all years between the base year and the current reporting year calculated in accordance with the entity's base-year recalculation policy.

When base-year and prior-year (if applicable) recalculations have been made, a reporting entity may disclose emissions previously reported in prior years (i.e., emissions before recalculation) to show the effect of the change in the reporting entity's structure over time.

If a reporting entity receives an external assurance report, it should provide that report. A reporting entity may also disclose information about the external assurance received, which can include the type of assurance, relevant competencies of the assurance provider, and conclusion or opinion of the assurance provider.

The GHG Protocol also includes optional disclosures on the quality of a reporting entity's GHG inventory, including the following:

- Information on the cause and size of estimates related to the emissions inventory
- A qualitative assessment of the quality of the information presented
- A description of the reporting entity's policies to improve the quality of the emissions inventory

Additionally, a report may disclose the contact information for an individual at the reporting entity that can respond to questions about the emissions inventory.

Optional disclosures related to GHG offsets (including both GHG removal and avoidance)

GHG removals are the elimination of GHGs after they have entered the atmosphere, which includes sequestration (i.e., the long-term storage of captured GHGs). A reporting entity may disclose information on GHG sequestration or removals, as applicable (e.g., in biomass-based industries, such as forestry), but these disclosures must be separate from the scopes (i.e., on a gross basis). However, we believe an emissions value net of any offsets (excluding offsets sold or transferred to a third party) may be separately and distinctly reported from the scopes.

GHG avoidance is the prevention of GHGs being emitted into the atmosphere. When a reporting entity achieves GHG reductions or avoids emissions due to a project or action within their inventory, it may disclose:

- An estimate of the emissions reduction or emissions avoided, based on the Greenhouse Gas Protocol project-level accounting guidance. This information must be presented separately from the scopes
- The methodology and assumptions used to calculate the emissions reduction or emissions avoided, including to what the reduction is being compared

When a reporting entity purchases or develops offsets outside of the inventory boundary, it may disclose:

- Information about the offsets, disaggregated by storage/removals and emissions reduction projects
- Whether the offsets are verified or certified
- Whether the offsets are approved by an external GHG program

If a reporting entity discloses information about offsets for emissions reductions at sources inside its inventory boundary, it should disclose the amount of any offsets that have been sold or transferred to third parties. The reporting entity may disclose the following information about those sold or transferred offsets:

- Information about the offsets
- Whether the offsets are verified or certified
- Whether the offsets are approved by an external GHG program

A Abbreviations used in this publication

Abbreviation	Term used in Greenhouse Gas Protocol
AR4	Fourth Assessment Report of IPCC
AR5	Fifth Assessment Report of IPCC
AR6	Sixth Assessment Report of IPCC
BTU	British Thermal Unit
CBECs	Commercial Buildings Energy Consumption Survey
CFCs	Chlorofluorocarbons
CH_4	Methane
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
CO_2e	Carbon dioxide equivalent
Corporate Standard	Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard
EACs	Energy attribute certificates
EEIO	Environmentally-extended input output
EFRAG	European Financial Reporting Advisory Group
eGRID	Emissions & Generation Resource Integrated Database
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
ERCOT	Electricity Reliability Council of Texas
ESRS	European Sustainability Reporting Standards
EU	European Union
FASB	Financial Accounting Standards Board
FERA	Fuel and energy-related activities
GHG	Greenhouse gas
GOs	Guarantees of Origin
GWP	Global warming potential
HFCs	Hydrofluorocarbons
IASB	International Accounting Standards Board
ICT	Information and Communication Technology
IEA	International Energy Agency
IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
ISSB	International Sustainability Standards Board
JOA	Joint operating agreement
KWh	Kilowatt hours
LBM	Location-based method
MBM	Market-based method
MWh	Megawatt-hour
N_2O	Nitrous oxide
NF_3	Nitrogen trifluoride
NOx	nitrogen oxides

Abbreviation	Term used in Greenhouse Gas Protocol
PCAF	Partnership for Carbon Accounting Financials
PFCs	Perfluorocarbons
PPAs	Power purchase agreements
Product Standard	Product Life Cycle Accounting and Reporting Standard
RECs	Renewable energy certificates
RPS	Renewable Portfolio Standards
Scope 3 Guidance	Technical Guidance for Calculating Scope 3 Emissions
Scope 3 Standard	Corporate Value Chain (Scope 3) Accounting and Reporting Standard
SF_6	Sulfur hexafluoride
T&D	Transmission and distribution
TEU	Twenty-foot equivalent unit
UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
VPPAs	Virtual power purchase agreements
WBCSD	World Business Council for Sustainable Development
WRI	World Resources Institute

B Glossary

The Corporate Standard, Scope 2 Guidance and Scope 3 Standard include separate glossaries defining the key terms used in each standard and guidance. This appendix includes excerpts from each of the glossaries defining the terms relevant to our publication. These key terms often overlap and may not be described precisely the same in the Corporate Standard, Scope 2 Guidance and Scope 3 Standard. The standard or guidance that describes the term differently is indicated with an asterisk (*).

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Activity data:** A quantitative measure of a level of activity that results in GHG emissions. Activity data is multiplied by an emissions factor to derive the GHG emissions associated with a process or an operation. Examples of activity data include kilowatt-hours of electricity used, quantity of fuel used, output of a process, hours equipment is operated, distance traveled, and floor area of a building.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**Additionality:** A criterion often applied to GHG project activities, stipulating that project-based GHG reductions should only be quantified if the project activity "would not have happened anyway"—i.e., that the project activity (or the same technologies or practices that it employs) would not have been implemented in its baseline scenario.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard*	**Allocation:** The process of assigning responsibility for GHG emissions from a specific generating unit or other system (e.g., vehicle, business unit corporation) among its various users of the product or service.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**Allowance:** A commodity issued by an emissions trading program that gives its holder the right to emit a certain quantity of GHG emissions.
Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**Associate:** An entity in which the parent company has significant influence but neither financial control nor joint financial control.
Scope 3 Standard	**Assurance:** The level of confidence that the inventory and report are complete, accurate, consistent, transparent, relevant, and without material misstatements.
Scope 3 Standard	**Assurer:** A competent individual or body who is conducting the assurance process, whether internally within the company or externally.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Attribute:** Descriptive or performance characteristics of a particular generation resource. For Scope 2 GHG accounting, the GHG emission rate attribute of the energy generation is required to be included in a contractual instrument in order to make a claim.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**Audit trail:** Well-organized and transparent historical records documenting how the GHG inventory was compiled.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Avoided emissions:** An assessment of emissions reduced or avoided compared to a reference case or baseline scenario.

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**Base year:** A historical datum (e.g., year) against which a company's emissions are tracked over time.
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Base year emissions:** GHG emissions in the base year
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**Base year emissions recalculation:** Recalculation of emissions in the base year to reflect a change in the structure of the company or a change in the accounting methodology used, to ensure data consistency over time.
Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**Baseline:** A hypothetical scenario for what GHG emissions would have been in the absence of a GHG project or reduction activity.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Baseline scenario:** A hypothetical description of what would have most likely occurred in the absence of any considerations about climate change mitigation. For grid-connected project activities, the baseline scenario is presumed to involve generation from the build margin, the operating margin, or a combination of the two.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**Biofuels:** Fuel made from plant material, such as wood, straw, and ethanol from plant matter.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Biogenic CO2 emissions:** CO2 emissions from the combustion or biodegradation of biomass.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Biogenic gas (biogas):** Methane that is produced from a biomass resource, such as animal waste, agricultural waste, landfill gas, municipal waste, or digester gas.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Biomass:** Any material or fuel produced by biological processes of living organisms, including organic non-fossil material of biological origin (e.g., plant material), biofuels (e.g., liquid fuels produced from biomass feedstocks), biogenic gas (e.g., landfill gas), and biogenic waste (e.g., municipal solid waste from biogenic sources).
Corporate Standard	**Boundaries:** GHG accounting and reporting boundaries can have several dimensions, (i.e., organizational, operational, geographic, business unit, and target boundaries). The inventory boundary determines which emissions are accounted and reported by the company.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Bundled:** An energy attribute certificate or other instrument that is traded with the underlying energy produced.
Scope 3 Standard	**Business travel:** Transportation of employees for business-related activities.
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance	**Cap-and-trade system:** A system that sets an overall emissions limit, allocates emissions allowances to participants, and allows them to trade allowances and emission credits with each other.

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 3 Standard	**Capital goods:** Final goods that have an extended life and are used by the company to manufacture a product, provide a service, or sell, store, and deliver merchandise. In financial accounting, capital goods are treated as fixed assets or plant, property and equipment (PP&E). Examples of capital goods include equipment, machinery, buildings, facilities, and vehicles.
Corporate Standard	**Capital Lease:** A lease which transfers substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership to the lessee and is accounted for as an asset on the balance sheet of the lessee. Also known as a Financial or Finance Lease. Leases other than Capital/Financial/Finance leases are Operating leases. Consult an accountant for further detail as definitions of lease types differ between various accepted financial standards.
Corporate Standard	**Carbon sequestration:** The uptake of CO2 and storage of carbon in biological sinks.
Scope 3 Standard	**Category:** See "Scope 3 Category"
Scope 2 Guidance	**Certificate:** See energy attribute certificate
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**CO2 equivalent (CO2e):** The universal unit of measurement to indicate the global warming potential (GWP) of each greenhouse gas, expressed in terms of the GWP of one unit of carbon dioxide. It is used to evaluate releasing (or avoiding releasing) different greenhouse gases against a common basis.
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance	**Cogeneration unit/combined heat and power (CHP):** A facility producing both electricity and steam/heat using the same fuel supply.
Scope 3 Standard	**Component:** An intermediate product.
Corporate Standard	**Consolidation:** Combination of GHG emissions data from separate operations that form part of one company or group of companies.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Consumer:** The end consumer or final user of a product.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Contractual instrument:** Any type of contract between two parties for the sale and purchase of energy bundled with attributes about the energy generation, or for unbundled attribute claims. Markets differ as to what contractual instruments are commonly available or used by companies to purchase energy or claim specific attributes about it, but they can include energy attribute certificates (RECs, GOs, etc), direct contracts (for both low-carbon, renewable or fossil fuel generation), supplier-specific emission rates, and other default emissions factors representing the untracked or unclaimed energy and emissions (termed the residual mix) if a company does not have other contractual information that meet the Scope 2 Quality Criteria.
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Control:** The ability of a company to direct the policies of another operation. More specifically, it is defined as either operational control (the organization or one of its subsidiaries has the full authority to introduce and implement its operating policies at the operation) or financial control (the organization has the ability to direct the financial and operating policies of the operation with a view to gaining economic benefits from its activities).

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 3 Standard	**Co-product:** One of multiple products produced by a facility or other system that has a market value.
Scope 3 Standard	**Cradle-to-gate:** All emissions that occur in the lifecycle of purchased products, up to the point of receipt by the reporting company (excluding emissions from sources that are owned or controlled by the reporting company).
Scope 3 Standard	**Customer**: An entity that purchases or acquires the products of another entity (i.e., a supplier). A customer may be a business customer or an end consumer.
Scope 3 Standard	**Debt investment:** Investment in an entity (e.g., through loans or bonds) for a fixed period of time that entitles the holder to repayment of the original investment (i.e., principal sum) plus interest, but does not entitle the investor to ownership in the entity.
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Direct emissions:** Emissions from sources that are owned or controlled by the reporting company.
Corporate Standard	**Direct monitoring:** Direct monitoring of exhaust stream contents in the form of continuous emissions monitoring (CEM) or periodic sampling.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Distributed generation:** Decentralized, grid-connected, or off-grid energy facilities located in or near the place where energy is used.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**Double counting:** Two or more reporting companies claiming the same emissions or reductions in the same scope, or a single company reporting the same emissions in multiple scopes.
Scope 3 Standard	**Downstream emissions:** Indirect GHG emissions from sold goods and services. Downstream emissions also include emissions from products that are distributed but not sold (i.e., without receiving payment).
Scope 3 Standard	**Economic allocation:** Allocating the emissions of an activity based on the market value of each output/product.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Electric utility:** An electric power company whose operations may include generation, transmission, and distribution of electricity for sale. Also called electricity or energy supplier.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Eligibility criteria:** Features or conditions defined by a policy or program that determine which energy generation facilities can participate in the program or whose certificates will fulfill programmatic requirements.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**Emissions factor:** A factor that converts activity data into GHG emissions data (e.g., kg CO2e emitted per liter of fuel consumed, kg CO2e emitted per kilometer traveled, etc.).
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Emissions:** The release of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere.

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 3 Standard	**Employee commuting:** Transportation of employees between their homes and their worksites.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Energy:** Formally, energy is defined as the amount of work a physical system can do on another. In this Guidance, energy refers to electrical energy generated by power plants and delivered to energy users over a power grid.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Energy attribute certificate:** A category of contractual instruments used in the energy sector to convey information about energy generation to other entities involved in the sale, distribution, consumption, or regulation of electricity. This category includes instruments that may go by several different names, including certificates, tags, credits, etc.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Energy generation facility:** Any technology or device that generates energy for consumer use, including everything from utility-scale fossil fuel power plants to rooftop solar panels.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Equity investment:** A share of equity interest in an entity. The most common form is common stock. Equity entitles the holder to a pro rata ownership in the company.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Equity share approach:** A consolidation approach whereby a company accounts for GHG emissions from operations according to its share of equity in the operation. The equity share reflects economic interest, which is the extent of rights a company has to the risks and rewards flowing from an operation.
Corporate Standard	**Equity share:** The equity share reflects economic interest, which is the extent of rights a company has to the risks and rewards flowing from an operation. Typically, the share of economic risks and rewards in an operation is aligned with the company's percentage ownership of that operation, and equity share will normally be the same as the ownership percentage.
Corporate Standard	**Estimation uncertainty:** Uncertainty that arises whenever GHG emissions are quantified, due to uncertainty in data inputs and calculation methodologies used to quantify GHG emissions.
Scope 3 Standard	**Extrapolated data:** Data from a similar process or activity that is used as a stand-in for the given process or activity and has been customized to be more representative of the given process or activity.
Scope 3 Standard	**Final product:** Goods and services that are consumed by the end user in their current form, without further processing, transformation, or inclusion in another product. Final products include not only products consumed by end consumers, but also products consumed by businesses in the current form (e.g., capital goods) and products sold to retailers for resale to end consumers (e.g., consumer products).
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**Finance lease:** A lease that transfers substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership to the lessee and is accounted for as an asset on the balance sheet of the lessee. Also known as a capital or financial lease. Leases other than capital/financial/finance leases are operating leases.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Financial control:** The ability to direct the financial and operating policies of an entity with a view to gaining economic benefits from its activities.

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Financial control approach:** A consolidation approach whereby a company accounts for 100 percent of the GHG emissions over which it has financial control. It does not account for GHG emissions from operations in which it owns an interest but does not have financial control.
Scope 3 Standard	**First party assurance:** Person(s) from within the reporting company but independent of the GHG inventory process conducts internal assurance. (Also called "self-" or "internal-assurance.")
Corporate Standard	**Fixed asset investment:** Equipment, land, stocks, property, incorporated and non-incorporated joint ventures, and partnerships over which the parent company has neither significant influence nor control.
Scope 3 Standard	**Franchise:** A business operating under a license (granted by a franchisor) to sell or distribute the franchisor's goods or services within a certain location.
Scope 3 Standard	**Franchisee:** An entity that operates a franchise and pays fees to a company (i.e., the franchisor) for the license to sell or distribute the franchisor's goods or services.
Scope 3 Standard	**Franchisor:** A company that grants licenses to other entities (i.e., franchisees) to sell or distribute its goods or services, and in return receives payments, such as royalties for the use of trademarks and other services.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Fuel mix disclosure:** A report by energy suppliers to their consumers disclosing the generation resources and associated attributes (such as GHG emissions and nuclear waste quantities) provided by that supplier. Disclosure laws often aim to enable informed customer choice in deregulated or liberalized markets.
Corporate Standard	**Fugitive emissions:** Emissions that are not physically controlled but result from the intentional or unintentional releases of GHGs. They commonly arise from the production, processing transmission storage and use of fuels and other chemicals, often through joints, seals, packing, gaskets, etc.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Generation:** The electrical energy produced by a power plant or project activity.
Corporate Standard	**GHG capture:** Collection of GHG emissions from a GHG source for storage in a sink.
Corporate Standard	**GHG credit:** GHG offsets can be converted into GHG credits when used to meet an externally imposed target. A GHG credit is a convertible and transferable instrument usually bestowed by a GHG program.
Corporate Standard	**GHG offset:** Offsets are discrete GHG reductions used to compensate for (i.e., offset) GHG emissions elsewhere, for example to meet a voluntary or mandatory GHG target or cap. Offsets are calculated relative to a baseline that represents a hypothetical scenario for what emissions would have been in the absence of the mitigation project that generates the offsets. To avoid double counting, the reduction giving rise to the offset must occur at sources or sinks not included in the target or cap for which it is used.

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**GHG program:** A generic term for: (1) any voluntary or mandatory, government or nongovernment initiative, system, or program that registers, certifies, or regulates GHG emissions; or (2) any authorities responsible for developing or administering such initiatives, systems, or programs.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**GHG project:** A specific activity or set of activities intended to reduce GHG emissions, increase the storage of carbon, or enhance GHG removals from the atmosphere. A GHG project may be a standalone project or a component of a larger non-GHG project.
Corporate Standard	**GHG registry:** A public database of organizational GHG emissions and/or project reductions. For example, the US Department of Energy 1605b Voluntary GHG Reporting Program, CCAR, World Economic Forum's Global GHG Registry. Each registry has its own rules regarding what and how information is reported.
Corporate Standard	**GHG removal:** Absorption or sequestration of GHGs from the atmosphere.
Corporate Standard	**GHG sink:** Any physical unit or process that stores GHGs; usually refers to forests and underground/deep sea reservoirs of CO2.
Corporate Standard	**GHG source:** Any physical unit or process which releases GHG into the atmosphere.
Corporate Standard	**GHG trades:** All purchases or sales of GHG emission allowances, offsets, and credits.
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Global warming potential (GWP):** A factor describing the radiative forcing impact (degree of harm to the atmosphere) of one unit of a given GHG relative to one unit of CO2.
Scope 3 Standard	**Good:** A tangible product.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**Green power:** A generic term for renewable energy sources and specific clean energy technologies that emit fewer GHG emissions relative to other sources of energy that supply the electric grid. Includes solar photovoltaic panels, solar thermal energy, geothermal energy, landfill gas, low-impact hydropower, and wind turbines. Resources included in a given certification, reporting, or recognition program may vary.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Green power product/green tariff:** A consumer option offered by an energy supplier distinct from the "standard" offering. These are often renewables or other low-carbon energy sources, supported by energy attribute certificates or other contracts.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Greenhouse gas inventory:** A quantified list of an organization's GHG emissions and sources.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard* Scope 3 Standard*	**Greenhouse gases (GHG):** For the purposes of this standard, GHGs are the seven gases covered by the UNFCCC: carbon dioxide (CO2); methane (CH4); nitrous oxide (N2O); hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs); perfluorocarbons (PFCs); sulphur hexafluoride (SF6), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF3).

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 2 Guidance	**Grid:** A system of power transmission and distribution (T&D) lines under the control of a coordinating entity or "grid operator," which transfers electrical energy generated by power plants to energy users—also called a "power grid." The boundaries of a power grid are determined by technical, economic, and regulatory-jurisdictional factors.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Grid operator:** The entity responsible for implementing procedures to dispatch a set of power plants in a given area to meet demand for electricity in real time. The precise institutional nature of the grid operator will differ from system to system. The grid operator may be alternately referred to as a "system dispatcher," "control area operator," "independent system operator," or "regional transmission organization," etc.
Corporate Standard	**Group company / subsidiary:** The parent company has the ability to direct the financial and operating policies of a group company/subsidiary with a view to gaining economic benefits from its activities.
Corporate Standard	**Heating value:** The amount of energy released when a fuel is burned completely. Care must be taken not to confuse higher heating values (HHVs), used in the US and Canada, and lower heating values, used in all other countries (for further details refer to the calculation tool for stationary combustion available at www.ghgprotocol.org).
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard* Scope 3 Standard*	**Indirect GHG emissions:** Emissions that are a consequence of the operations of the reporting company, but occur at sources owned or controlled by another company. This includes Scope 2 and Scope 3.
Corporate Standard	**Insourcing:** The administration of ancillary business activities, formally performed outside of the company, using resources within a company.
Corporate Standard	**Intensity ratios:** Ratios that express GHG impact per unit of physical activity or unit of economic value (e.g. tonnes of CO2 emissions per unit of electricity generated). Intensity ratios are the inverse of productivity/efficiency ratios.
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance	**Intensity target:** A target defined by reduction in the ratio of emissions and a business metric over time e.g., reduce CO2 per metric ton of cement by 12 percent between 2000 and 2008.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**Intergovernmental Panel on climate change (IPCC):** An international body of climate change scientists. The role of the IPCC is to assess the scientific, technical, and socioeconomic information relevant to the understanding of the risk of human-induced climate change
Scope 3 Standard	**Intermediate product:** Goods that are inputs to the production of other goods or services that require further processing, transformation, or inclusion in another product before use by the end consumer. Intermediate products are not consumed by the end user in their current form.
Corporate Standard	**Inventory:** A quantified list of an organization's GHG emissions and sources.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**Inventory boundary:** An imaginary line that encompasses the direct and indirect emissions included in the inventory. It results from the chosen organizational and operational boundaries.

Publication	Glossary definition
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance	**Inventory quality:** The extent to which an inventory provides a faithful, true, and fair account of an organization's GHG emissions.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Jurisdiction:** A geopolitical region under a single legal and regulatory authority. For market boundaries for certificate use and trading described in this guidance, jurisdictions are typically countries but may be multi-country regions.
Corporate Standard	**Kyoto Protocol:** A protocol to the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC). Once entered into force it will require countries listed in its Annex B (developed nations) to meet reduction targets of GHG emissions relative to their 1990 levels during the period of 2008–12.
Corporate Standard	**Leakage (Secondary effect):** Leakage occurs when a project changes the availability or quantity of a product or service that results in changes in GHG emissions elsewhere.
Scope 3 Standard	**Leased asset:** Any asset that is leased (e.g., facilities, vehicles, etc.)
Scope 3 Standard	**Lessee:** An entity that has the right to use an asset through a contract with the owner of the asset (i.e., the lessor).
Scope 3 Standard	**Lessor:** An entity that owns an asset and leases it to a third party (i.e., the lessee).
Scope 3 Standard	**Level of assurance:** Refers to the degree of confidence stakeholders can have over the information in the inventory report.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Levy Exemption Certificate (LEC):** Certificates used in the U.K. to provide energy suppliers with evidence needed to demonstrate to HMRC that electricity supplied to U.K. business customers is exempt from the Climate Change Levy.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Life cycle:** Consecutive and interlinked stages of a product system, from raw material acquisition or generation of natural resources to end of life.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**Life cycle assessment (LCA):** Compilation and evaluation of the inputs, outputs, and the potential environmental impacts of a product system throughout its life cycle.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Location-based method for Scope 2 accounting:** A method to quantify Scope 2 GHG emissions based on average energy generation emissions factors for defined locations, including local, subnational, or national boundaries.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Market-based method for Scope 2 accounting:** A method to quantify Scope 2 GHG emissions based on GHG emissions emitted by the generators from which the reporter contractually purchases electricity bundled with instruments, or unbundled instruments on their own.
Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**Material misstatement:** Individual or aggregate errors, omissions and misrepresentations that significantly impact the GHG inventory results and could influence a user's decisions.
Scope 3 Standard	**Materiality:** Concept that individual or the aggregation of errors, omissions and misrepresentations could affect the GHG inventory and could influence the intended users' decisions.

Publication	Glossary definition
Corporate Standard	**Materiality threshold:** A concept employed in the process of verification. It is often used to determine whether an error or omission is a material discrepancy or not. It should not be viewed as a de minimus for defining a complete inventory.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Megawatt (MW):** A unit of electrical power. One megawatt of power output is equivalent to the transfer of one million joules of electrical energy per second to the grid.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Megawatt-hour (MWh):** A unit of electrical energy equal to 3.6 billion joules; the amount of energy produced over one hour by a power plant with an output of 1 MW.
Corporate Standard	**Mobile combustion:** Burning of fuels by transportation devices such as cars, trucks, trains, airplanes, ships etc.
Corporate Standard	**Model uncertainty:** GHG quantification uncertainty associated with mathematical equations used to characterize the relationship between various parameters and emission processes.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Net metering:** A method for energy suppliers to credit customers for electricity that they generate on site in excess of their own electricity consumption and sell back to the grid. Any electricity purchases from the gird are deducted (or "netted") from the generation sent to the grid. The specific financial rules for net metering may vary by country and state.
Scope 3 Standard	**Non-production-related procurement:** Purchased goods and services that are not integral to the company's products but are instead used to enable operations (also called indirect procurement).
Scope 2 Guidance	**Null power**: Energy from which energy attribute certificates or other instruments have been separated and sold off, leaving the underlying power without specific attributes. Also called "commodity electricity."
Scope 2 Guidance	**Offset credit:** Offset credits (also called offsets, or verified emission reductions) represent the reduction, removal, or avoidance of GHG emissions from a specific project that is used to compensate for GHG emissions occurring elsewhere, for example to meet a voluntary or mandatory GHG target or cap. Offsets are calculated relative to a baseline that represents a hypothetical scenario for what emissions would have been in the absence of the mitigation project that generates the offsets. To avoid double counting, the reduction giving rise to the offset must occur at sources or sinks not included in the target or cap for which it is used.
Scope 2 Guidance	**On-site generation:** Electricity generated by a generation facility located where some or all of the energy is used. If the generation facility is owned and operated by the consuming company, it can be called "self-generation." On-site generation is a form of distributed energy generation.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**Operating lease:** A lease that does not transfer the risks and rewards of ownership to the lessee and is not recorded as an asset in the balance sheet of the lessee. Leases other than operating leases are capital/financial/finance leases.
Corporate Standard	**Operation:** A generic term used to denote any kind of business, irrespective of its organizational, governance, or legal structures. An operation can be a facility, subsidiary, affiliated company or other form of joint venture.

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**Operational boundaries:** The boundaries that determine the direct and indirect emissions associated with operations owned or controlled by the reporting company.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Operational control:** A consolidation approach whereby a company accounts for 100 percent of the GHG emissions over which it has operational control. It does not account for GHG emissions from operations in which it owns an interest but does not have operational control.
Corporate Standard	**Organic growth/decline:** Increases or decreases in GHG emissions as a result of changes in production output, product mix, plant closures and the opening of new plants.
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Organizational boundaries:** The boundaries that determine the operations owned or controlled by the reporting company, depending on the consolidation approach taken (equity or control approach).
Corporate Standard Scope 3 Standard	**Outsourcing:** The contracting out of activities to other businesses.
Corporate Standard	**Parameter uncertainty:** GHG quantification uncertainty associated with quantifying the parameters used as inputs to estimation models.
Scope 3 Standard	**Parent company:** An entity that has one or more subsidiaries.
Scope 3 Standard	**Physical allocation:** Allocating the emissions of an activity based on an underlying physical relationship between the multiple inputs/outputs and the quantity of emissions generated.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Power purchase agreement (PPA):** A type of contract that allows a consumer, typically large industrial or commercial entities, to form an agreement with a specific energy generating unit. The contract itself specifies the commercial terms including delivery, price, payment, etc. In many markets, these contracts secure a long-term stream of revenue for an energy project. In order for the consumer to say they are buying the electricity of the specific generator, attributes shall be contractually transferred to the consumer with the electricity.
Scope 3 Standard	**Primary data:** Data from specific activities within a company's value chain.
Corporate Standard	**Primary effects:** The specific GHG reducing elements or activities (reducing GHG emissions, carbon storage, or enhancing GHG removals) that the project is intended to achieve.
Scope 3 Standard	**Process:** A set of interrelated or interacting activities that transforms or transports a product.
Corporate Standard	**Process emissions:** Emissions generated from manufacturing processes, such as the CO2 that is arises from the breakdown of calcium carbonate (CaCO3) during cement manufacture.
Scope 3 Standard	**Product:** Any good or service.

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 3 Standard	**Production-related procurement:** Purchased goods that are directly related to the production of a company's products (also called direct procurement).
Corporate Standard	**Productivity/efficiency ratios:** Ratios that express the value or achievement of a business divided by its GHG impact. Increasing efficiency ratios reflect a positive performance improvement. e.g. resource productivity (sales per tonne GHG). Productivity/efficiency ratios are the inverse of intensity ratios.
Scope 3 Standard	**Project finance:** Long term financing of projects (e.g., infrastructure and industrial projects) by equity investors (sponsors) and debt investors (financiers), based on the projected cash flows of the project rather than the balance sheet of the sponsors/lenders.
Scope 3 Standard	**Proxy data:** Data from a similar process or activity that is used as a stand-in for the given process or activity without being customized to be more representative of the given process or activity.
Corporate Standard	**Ratio indicator:** Indicators providing information on relative performance such as intensity ratios or productivity/efficiency ratios.
Corporate Standard Scope 2 Guidance	**Renewable energy:** Energy taken from sources that are inexhaustible, (e.g., wind, water, solar, geothermal energy, and biofuels).
Scope 2 Guidance	**Renewable energy certificate (REC):** A type of energy attribute certificate, used in the U.S. and Australia. In the U.S., a REC is defined as representing the property rights to the generation, environmental, social, and other non-power attributes of renewable electricity generation.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Renewable portfolio standards (RPS):** A state- or national-level policy that requires that a minimum amount (usually a percentage) of electricity supply provided by each supply company is to come from renewable energy.
Corporate Standard Scope 3 Standard	**Reporting:** Presenting data to internal management and external users such as regulators, shareholders, the general public or specific stakeholder groups.
Scope 3 Standard	**Reporting year:** The year for which emissions are reported.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Residual mix:** The mix of energy generation resources and associated attributes such as GHG emissions in a defined geographic boundary left after contractual instruments have been claimed/retired/canceled. The residual mix can provide an emissions factor for companies without contractual instruments to use in a market-based method calculation.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Retailer (also retail provider):** The entity selling energy to final consumers, representing final process in the delivery of electricity from generation to the consumer. Also known as electric service provider, competitive power supplier or power marketer depending on the national or subnational regulation.
Corporate Standard	**Reversibility of reductions:** This occurs when reductions are temporary, or where removed or stored carbon may be returned to the atmosphere at some point in the future.

Publication	Glossary definition
Corporate Standard	**Rolling base year:** The process of shifting or rolling the base year forward by a certain number of years at regular intervals of time.
Corporate Standard	**Scientific Uncertainty:** Uncertainty that arises when the science of the actual emission and/or removal process is not completely understood.
Corporate Standard	**Scope:** Defines the operational boundaries in relation to indirect and direct GHG emissions.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Scope 1 emissions:** Emissions from operations that are owned or controlled by the reporting company.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard*	**Scope 2 emissions:** Indirect emissions from the generation of purchased or acquired electricity, steam, heat or cooling consumed by the reporting company.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Scope 2 quality criteria:** A set of requirements that contractual instruments shall meet in order to be used in the market-based method for Scope 2 accounting.
Scope 3 Standard	**Scope 3 activity:** An individual source of emissions included in a Scope 3 Category.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Scope 3 Category:** One of the 15 types of Scope 3 emissions.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Scope 3 emissions:** All indirect emissions (not included in Scope 2) that occur in the value chain of the reporting company, including both upstream and downstream emissions.
Scope 3 Standard	**Secondary data:** Data that is not from specific activities within a company's value chain.
Corporate Standard	**Secondary effects (Leakage):** GHG emissions changes resulting from the project not captured by the primary effect(s). These are typically the small, unintended GHG consequences of a project.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Self-generation:** On-site generation owned or operated by the entity that consumes the power.
Corporate Standard	**Sequestered atmospheric carbon:** Carbon removed from the atmosphere by biological sinks and stored in plant tissue. Sequestered atmospheric carbon does not include GHGs captured through carbon capture and storage.
Scope 3 Standard	**Service:** An intangible product.
Scope 2 Guidance Corporate Standard*	**Significance threshold:** A qualitative or quantitative criterion used to define a significant structural change. It is the responsibility of the company, GHG program to which the company is reporting, or the company's verifier to determine the "significance threshold" for considering base-year emissions recalculation. In most cases the "significance threshold" depends on the use of the information, the characteristics of the company, and the features of structural changes.
Scope 3 Standard	**Significant influence:** Power to participate in the financial and operating policy decisions but not control them. A holding of 20 percent or more of the voting power (directly or through subsidiaries) will indicate significant influence unless it can be clearly demonstrated otherwise. See International Accounting Standard (IAS) 28 for additional criteria for determining significant influence.

Publication	Glossary definition
Corporate Standard	**Stationary Combustion:** Burning of fuels to generate electricity, steam, heat, or power in stationary equipment such as boilers, furnaces etc.
Corporate Standard	**Structural change:** A change in the organizational or operational boundaries of a company that result in the transfer of ownership or control of emissions from one company to another. Structural changes usually result from a transfer of ownership of emissions, such as mergers, acquisitions, divestitures, but can also include outsourcing/insourcing.
Scope 3 Standard	**Subsidiary:** An entity over which the parent company has control, including incorporated and non-incorporated joint ventures and partnerships over which the parent company has control.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Supplier:** An entity that provides or sells products to another entity (i.e., a customer). For this guidance, refers to electricity supplier.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Supplier quota:** Regulations requiring electricity suppliers to source a percentage of their supply from specified energy sources, e.g. Renewable Portfolio Standards in U.S. states. Regulations generally defined eligibility criteria that energy facilities must fulfill in order to be used to demonstrate compliance.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Supplier-specific emissions factor:** An emission rate provided by an electricity supplier to its customers, reflecting the emissions associated with the energy it provides. Suppliers offering differentiated products (e.g., a renewable energy product) should provide specific emission rates for each product and ensure they are not double counted with standard power offers.
Scope 2 Guidance Scope 3 Standard	**Supply chain:** A network of organizations (e.g., manufacturers, wholesalers, distributors and retailers) involved in the production, delivery, and sale of a product to the consumer.
Scope 3 Standard	**Third party assurance:** Person(s) from an organization independent of the GHG inventory process conducts third party assurance. (Also called "External assurance.")
Scope 3 Standard	**Tier 1 supplier:** A supplier that provides or sells products directly to the reporting company. A tier 1 supplier is a company with which the reporting company has a purchase order for goods or services.
Scope 3 Standard	**Tier 2 supplier:** A supplier that provides or sells products directly to the reporting company's tier 1 supplier. A tier 2 supplier is a company with which the reporting company's tier 1 supplier has a purchase order for goods and services.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Tracking system:** A database or registry that helps execute energy attribute certificate issuance and cancellation/retirement/claims between account holders in the system. It can track information on certificates or generation occurring throughout the defined system. They are typically tied to geopolitical or grid operational boundaries.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Unbundled:** An energy attribute certificate or other instrument that is separate, and may be traded separately, from the underlying energy produced.

Publication	Glossary definition
Scope 3 Standard Corporate Standard*	**Uncertainty:** 1. Quantitative definition: Measurement that characterizes the dispersion of values that could reasonably be attributed to a parameter. 2. Qualitative definition: A general and imprecise term that refers to the lack of certainty in data and methodology choices, such as the application of non-representative factors or methods, incomplete data on sources and sinks, lack of transparency etc.
Corporate Standard	**United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC):** Signed in 1992 at the Rio Earth Summit, the UNFCCC is a milestone treaty that provides an overall framework for international efforts to mitigate climate change. The Kyoto Protocol is a protocol to the UNFCCC.
Scope 3 Standard	**Upstream emissions:** Indirect GHG emissions from purchased or acquired goods and services.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Utility:** See electric utility.
Scope 3 Standard	**Value chain:** In this standard, "value chain" refers to all of the upstream and downstream activities associated with the operations of the reporting company, including the use of sold products by consumers and the end-of-life treatment of sold products after consumer use.
Corporate Standard Scope 3 Standard	**Value chain emissions:** Emissions from the upstream and downstream activities associated with the operations of the reporting company.
Corporate Standard	**Verification:** An independent assessment of the reliability (considering completeness and accuracy) of a GHG inventory.
Scope 2 Guidance	**Vintage:** The date that electric generation occurs and/or was measured, from which an energy attribute certificate is issued. This should be distinguished from an energy facility's age (e.g. date that a generating unit commenced operation).
Scope 3 Standard	**Waste:** An output of a process that has no market value.

C GHG Protocol Disclosure Checklist

Greenhouse Gas Protocol (GHGP) disclosure checklist

Name of entity: Prepared by:

Reporting period: Approved by:

Instructions and explanatory comments

Completion of this checklist is recommended for all sustainability assurance engagements that include greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions as subject matter AND identify any of the below as the criteria (collectively, the "GHGP"):

- The GHG Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard ("Corporate Standard")
- The GHG Protocol Scope 2 Guidance ("Scope 2 Guidance")
- The GHG Protocol Corporate Value Chain (Scope 3) Accounting and Reporting Standard ("Scope 3 Standard")
- The GHG Protocol Technical Guidance for Calculating Scope 3 Emissions ("Scope 3 Technical Guidance")

This checklist includes references to the required disclosures and other disclosures the GHGP collectively considers to be recommended and optional.

The Corporate Standard was published in 2004 and was amended by the Scope 2 Guidance when it was published in 2015. The Scope 3 Standard was published in 2011 as a supplement to the Corporate Standard, and the Scope 3 Technical Guidance was published in 2013 as a supplement to the Scope 3 Standard. As described in Table 1.1 of the Scope 3 Standard, Corporate-level GHG reporting options, there are three reporting options under the GHGP. Some sustainability reporting frameworks refer to the GHG Protocol and require the disclosure of Scope 3 emissions. Therefore, not all these options are available for entities applying those frameworks.

Option	Description	Applicable GHG Criteria — illustrative example of referencing criteria	Applicable sections of the checklist
1	A company reports its Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG emissions and either: (1) no Scope 3 emissions; or (2) Scope 3 emissions from activities that are not aligned with any of the prescribed Scope 3 categories (the latter is very rare)	***The GHG Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard*** *and* ***The GHG Protocol Scope 2 Guidance****.*	***Required***: 1, 2, 4, 5, 7 ***As applicable***: 3, 6, 8 — 17, 21, 29 — 43 ***Not applicable***: 18 — 20, 22 — 28
2	A company reports its Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG emissions and some, but not all, relevant and material Scope 3 GHG emissions in accordance with the Scope 3 calculation guidance but not following the Scope 3 reporting guidance	***The GHG Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard***, ***The GHG Protocol Scope 2 Guidance*** *and the* ***Technical Guidance for Calculating Scope 3 Emissions*** for the reported Scope 3 emissions. *The* ***GHG Protocol Corporate Value Chain (Scope 3) Accounting and Reporting Standard*** *is not applied*	***Required***: 1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 18, 20 ***As applicable:*** 3, 6, 8 — 17, 21 — 43 ***Not applicable***: 19

Option	Description	Applicable GHG Criteria — illustrative example of referencing criteria	Applicable sections of the checklist
3	A company reports its Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG emissions and all relevant and material categories of Scope 3 GHG emissions	***The GHG Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard***, ***The GHG Protocol Scope 2 Guidance***, ***The GHG Protocol Corporate Value Chain (Scope 3) Accounting and Reporting Standard*** *and* ***The GHG Protocol Technical Guidance for Calculating Scope 3 Emissions***	***Required***: 1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 19, 20 ***As applicable:*** 3, 6, 8 — 17, 21 — 43 ***Not applicable***: 18

This checklist is intended to provide users with a summary of the required, recommended and optional disclosures within the standards and guidance from the GHGP described above in one place. In addition, this checklist does not include any incremental disclosure requirements from sustainability reporting frameworks that refer to the GHGP. Reading this checklist is not a replacement for reading the relevant portions of the GHGP standards and guidance. Entities should refer directly to the relevant GHGP source for the comprehensive disclosure requirements and additional context.

Items in the checklist denoted by the following symbol (§) are not explicit reporting requirements from the GHGP. In our view, entities should consider disclosing this information as it ensures the objectives of the related required disclosures included in the GHGP are met.

Table of contents

I. General disclosures C-5
Description of the company and inventory boundary C-5
Information on Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions C-5
Information on base year C-8
II. Scope-specific disclosures C-9
Scope 2 specific disclosures C-9
Scope 3 specific disclosures C-10
III. Other disclosure topics C-20
Targets and goals C-20
Energy not consumed by the reporting entity C-21
Energy information C-21
Report information C-21
Carbon offsets and avoidances C-22

Instructions — One of the following responses is required for each disclosure question within the respective sections of this checklist:

- **Yes** — Indicates the disclosure was made
- **No** — Indicates that the disclosure is applicable but has not been made
- **N/A** — Item not present (disclosure not applicable to the company)

Reference/Explanation — Required for all responses for required disclosures — "yes" and "no". If checked "yes", then the disclosure location should be noted (e.g., report, schedule, footnote number). **Any item marked "No" should be explained in the checklist or in a separate memorandum. Items not disclosed because they are immaterial should be marked "No" and the explanation should include an appropriate qualitative and/or quantitative assessment.**

The recommended and optional disclosures specified in the GHGP are noted throughout the checklist, by inserting "**Recommended**" or "**Optional**" in front of the item. Although these disclosures are not required by the GHGP, they should be made if the entity determines that excluding such disclosures would make the presentation of the GHG emissions misleading. An entity is not required to provide an explanation for any recommended or optional item marked "No". "No" indicates the entity has concluded that the exclusion of such a disclosure does not make the presentation of the information misleading.

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
I. General disclosures					
Description of the company and inventory boundary					
1.	Disclose the following information about the reporting boundary for the Statements of GHG emissions: (Corporate Standard Chapter 9)				
	a. The organizational boundary (e.g., legal entities, geographic locations)	☐	☐	☐	
	i. **Optional**: A list of facilities included in the reported emissions inventory	☐	☐	☐	
	b. The operational boundary (e.g., emissions associated with its operations)	☐	☐	☐	
	c. The consolidation approach (e.g., equity share, financial control, operational control) applied consistently to the inventory	☐	☐	☐	
2.	Disclose the reporting period covered by the Statements of GHG emissions. In most cases, this can be made apparent by headings (e.g., "Statements of GHG emissions for the year ended 12/31/2X"), Otherwise, separate disclosure is required. (Corporate Standard Chapter 9)	☐	☐	☐	
3.	**Optional**: If the entity has contracts that address GHG-related risks and obligations (e.g., a joint operation with a contract that specifies how the ownership of emissions or the responsibility for managing emissions and associated risk is distributed between the parties involved in the joint operation), disclose information about the contractual provisions that address GHG-related risks and obligations (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)	☐	☐	☐	
Information on Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions					
4.	Disclose the following separately for each Scope, inclusive of emission from all seven GHGs, and independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets: (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)				
	a. Total Scope 1 emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	b. Total Scope 2 location-based method (LBM) emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	c. Total Scope 2 market-based method (MBM) emissions **Note**: In cases where a company does not have MBM information or has operations in locations that do not support a MBM approach, emissions shall be calculated using the LBM (making such operations' results identical for LBM and MBM)	☐	☐	☐	
5.	Disclose the following separately by the seven GHGs that are material to the company (CO_2, CH_4, N_2O, HFCs, PFCs, SF_6, NF_3) in metric tons and in tons of CO_2 equivalent: (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11) **Note**: The requirement in the Corporate Standard includes six GHGs. However, the Scope 2 Guidance amended the Corporate Standard to include NF_3 as a seventh GHG for disclosure				
	a. Scope 1 emissions	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
	b. Scope 2 LBM emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	c. Scope 2 MBM emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	d. **Optional**: Emissions in the reporting entity's operations or value chain from GHGs that are not CO_2, CH_4, N_2O, HFCs, PFCs, SF_6 or NF_3 but have a GWP identified by the IPCC, separately from the emissions for the reported Scopes, along with a list of those GHGs included in the inventory	☐	☐	☐	
6.	If the reporting entity consumes biogenically sequestered carbon as fuel (e.g., biomass, biofuels), disclose the direct CO_2 from those biogenic emissions separately from the Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG emissions and by Scope (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7)	☐	☐	☐	
	a. **Recommended**: Disclose biogenic CO_2 emissions from electricity use separately from the Scopes	☐	☐	☐	
	b. **Recommended**: Disclose whether any GHG emissions other than CO_2 associated with biogenic emissions from electricity use are not available for, or have been excluded from, the LBM grid average emissions factors or the MBM information applied (e.g., have CH_4 and N_2O been excluded)	☐	☐	☐	
7.	Disclose the following about the methodologies used to calculate and measure Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG emissions: (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7)				
	a. Scope 1 GHG emissions				
	i. A description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies), including providing a reference or link to any calculation tools used	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. References to the emissions factors used (§)	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the data sources used (e.g., to the extent material, actual activity data vs estimated activity data) (§)	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation (§)	☐	☐	☐	
	b. Scope 2 LBM GHG emissions				
	i. A description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies), including providing a reference or link to any calculation tools used	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. References to the emissions factors used (§)	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the data sources used (e.g., to the extent material, actual activity data vs estimated activity data) (§)	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation (§)	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
	c. Scope 2 MBM GHG emissions				
	i. A description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies), including providing a reference or link to any calculation tools used	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. References to the emissions factors used (§)	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the data sources used (e.g., to the extent material, actual activity data vs estimated activity data) (§)	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation (§)	☐	☐	☐	
	v. **Recommended**: In cases where a company does not have MBM information or has operations in locations that do not support a MBM approach, disclose the percentage of overall electricity consumption reported in the market-based method that reflects actual markets with contractual information	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. The category or categories of instruments (e.g., RECs, green tariffs, supplier-specific) from which the MBM emissions factors were derived, where possible specifying the energy generation technologies (e.g., wind, solar) (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7, Chapter 8)	☐	☐	☐	
	(a) **Recommended**: Disclose key features associated with the contractual instruments claimed, including any instrument certification labels that include their own set of eligibility criteria, as well as characteristics of the energy generation facility and the policy context of the instrument	☐	☐	☐	
	(b) **Recommended**: If the contractual instruments claimed in the reported Scope 2 MBM emissions reflect a substantive contribution by the company in helping to implement new low-carbon projects, disclose narrative information about how this was done	☐	☐	☐	
	(c) **Optional**: Disclose an internal or external third-party assurance process, or assurance of conformance provided by a certification program, supplier label, green or power program (e.g., through an assurance form)	☐	☐	☐	
8.	Disclose any exclusions of sources, facilities and/or operations from emissions disclosures. (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11) **Note**: Emissions disclosed by reporting entities shall be complete within the selected reporting boundary, and the reporting boundary shall be complete to reflect the operations of the company. Any exclusions should be justified	☐	☐	☐	
	a. **Optional**: Disclose qualitative information about any emission sources that are not quantified and included in the reported emissions (Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11) (§)	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
9.	If the reporting entity adds together its Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions to report an aggregate value, disclose either of the following: (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7)	☐	☐	☐	
	a. Two aggregate values (i.e., one reflecting each Scope 2 method — LBM and MBM); or	☐	☐	☐	
	b. An aggregate value reflecting one of the Scope 2 methods (LBM or MBM) and the Scope 2 method used. **Note**: The method used should be the same method used for goal setting, if applicable	☐	☐	☐	
10.	**Optional**: Disclose further disaggregation of emissions data, such as by business units, facilities, country, source types (e.g., stationary combustion, process, fugitive), and activity types (e.g., production of electricity, transportation). (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)	☐	☐	☐	
Information on base year					
11.	Disclose the following about the base year: (Corporate Standard Chapter 5 and 9, Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11) **Note**: A reporting entity is required to establish and report on a base year for Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions, but it is not required to set a base year for Scope 3 emissions until it chooses to track Scope 3 performance or sets a Scope 3 reduction target **Note**: If the reporting entity discloses information on base year and has a goal related to its base year emissions, consider disclosing the goal and annual progress against the goal **Note**: If information on base year is not included in the presentation of the subject matter that is subject to assurance, the reporting entity should consider what disclosures on the subject matter may be appropriate to provide context to report users related to base year reporting				
	a. Year chosen as base year and reasons for choosing this base year	☐	☐	☐	
	b. Discussion of the policy for base year recalculations and any significance threshold applied	☐	☐	☐	
	c. Context for any significant emissions changes that have triggered base year emissions recalculation, such as structural changes (i.e., mergers, acquisitions, divestitures, outsourcing and insourcing of emitting activities), changes in reporting boundaries, changes in calculation methodology or improvements in the accuracy of emissions factors or activity data	☐	☐	☐	
	d. **Optional**: If there are any significant emissions changes in the current year that have not triggered base year recalculations (e.g., process changes, efficiency improvements, organic structural growth (e.g., opening newly constructed facilities) or decline (e.g., facilities closures)), disclose the causes of these changes	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
	e. Emissions for the identified base year and current reporting year that are calculated in accordance with the entity's base year recalculation policy	☐	☐	☐	
	f. **Optional**: Emissions data for all years between the base year and the current reporting year calculated in accordance with the entity's base year recalculation policy	☐	☐	☐	
	g. The method used to calculate the base year's Scope 2 emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	h. If a MBM is used to calculate the base year's Scope 2 emissions, whether location-based data is used as a proxy for a MBM due to a lack of availability of Scope 2 MBM base year data	☐	☐	☐	
	i. If Scope 3 emissions are included for the base year, disclose Scope 3 emissions by category in the base year	☐	☐	☐	
	j. **Optional**: Disclose recalculated emissions as well as emissions reported in respective prior years (i.e., emissions before recalculation) to illustrate the evolution of the reporting entity's structure over time.	☐	☐	☐	

II. Scope-specific disclosures

	Scope 2 specific disclosures				
12.	For Scope 2 MBM emissions, if a residual mix emissions factor is not currently available or applied to the Scope 2 MBM emissions calculation, disclose that an adjusted emissions factor is not available or has not been estimated to account for voluntary purchases and this may result in double counting between electricity consumers. (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7)	☐	☐	☐	
13.	**Optional**: Disclose further disaggregation of Scope 2 LBM and MBM emissions by country. (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7).	☐	☐	☐	
14.	**Optional**: Where advanced grid study (or real-time) information is available, disclose the following information: (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7)	☐	☐	☐	
	a. A separate Scope 2 estimate using the advanced grid study (or real-time) information for comparison with the Scope 2 LBM grid-average emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	b. Information on how the use of advanced grid study (or real-time) information has informed efficiency decision making or time-of-day operations	☐	☐	☐	
15.	**Optional**: If the reporting entity is subject to mandatory corporate reporting requirements for facilities in a particular region that specify calculation methodologies for Scope 2 reporting other than the LBM and MBM, disclose the results for these methodologies separately from the Scopes (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7)	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
16.	**Recommended**: Disclose additional instruments that were required to be retired to meet regulatory reporting requirements in connection with the retirement of instruments applied to Scope 2 MBM emissions (e.g., certificate multipliers or other pairings required by regulatory policy). (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7)	☐	☐	☐	
17.	**Optional**: If the reporting entity purchased instruments that did not meet all Scope 2 Quality Criteria and, therefore, were not included in the entity's Scope 2 MBM emissions calculation, disclose: (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7) **Note**: Additional calculations of Scope 2 MBM emissions that include instruments that do not meet the Scope 2 Quality Criteria (e.g., "Scope 2 MBM would be XX considering these instruments") may not be included in the presentation of the subject matter because they could make it misleading				
	a. That the reporting entity purchased instruments that did not meet all of the Scope 2 Quality Criteria	☐	☐	☐	
	b. The Quality Criteria that have been met and why the remaining Quality Criteria have not been met	☐	☐	☐	
Scope 3 specific disclosures					
18.	If the reporting entity is reporting on some, but not all relevant and material Scope 3 emission categories, report the emissions separately for each calculated category. (Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11, Corporate Standard Chapter 9)	☐	☐	☐	
19.	If the reporting entity is reporting on all relevant and material Scope 3 emission categories, disclose a list of all fifteen Scope 3 categories and indicate which categories and activities are included and which are excluded. For those categories that are excluded, disclose the justification for the exclusion. (Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)	☐	☐	☐	
20.	For each Scope 3 Category reported as applicable, disclose the following: (Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11): **Note**: If an entity is reporting on some but not all relevant and material Scope 3 emissions, it is only required to disclose information in accordance with the Corporate Standard, which does not define the Scope 3 categories. It is recommended to define and calculate the Scope 3 emissions in accordance with the Technical Guidance for Calculating Scope 3 Emissions and to provide the detailed disclosures related to Scope 3 categories as indicated below	☐	☐	☐	
	a. Category 1: Purchased goods and services				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and Global Warming Potential (GWP) values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
b.	*Category 2: Capital goods*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and Global Warming Potential (GWP) values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
c.	*Category 3: Fuel- and energy-related activities (not included in Scope 1 or Scope 2)*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
ii.	A description of the emissions factors and Global Warming Potential (GWP) values applied	☐	☐	☐	
iii.	A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
iv.	The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
v.	The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
vi.	A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
vii.	If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
viii.	**Recommended**: If category 3 is calculated using Scope 2 MBM values, disclose that the MBM was used for the emissions calculation (Scope 2 Guidance, Chapter 7)	☐	☐	☐	
d.	*Category 4: Upstream transportation and distribution*				
i.	The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
ii.	A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied	☐	☐	☐	
iii.	A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
iv.	The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
v.	The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
vi.	A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
vii.	If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
viii.	A description of any emissions included in the reported category that are outside of the minimum boundary for that category, noting that reporting entities shall report for Scope 3 emissions according to the minimum boundaries listed for each category in the Scope 3 Standard (§)	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
e.	*Category 5: Waste generated in operations*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
	viii. A description of any emissions included in the reported category that are outside of the minimum boundary for that category, noting that reporting entities shall report for Scope 3 emissions according to the minimum boundaries listed for each category in the Scope 3 Standard(§)	☐	☐	☐	
f.	*Category 6: Business travel*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
	viii. A description of any emissions included in the reported category that are outside of the minimum boundary for that category, noting that reporting entities shall report for Scope 3 emissions according to the minimum boundaries listed for each category in the Scope 3 Standard. (§)	☐	☐	☐	
g.	*Category 7: Employee commuting*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
	viii. A description of any emissions included in the reported category that are outside of the minimum boundary for that category, noting that reporting entities shall report for Scope 3 emissions according to the minimum boundaries listed for each category in the Scope 3 Standard. (§)	☐	☐	☐	
h.	*Category 8: Upstream leased assets*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
iii.	A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
iv.	The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
v.	The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
vi.	A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
vii.	If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
viii.	A description of any emissions included in the reported category that are outside of the minimum boundary for that category, noting that reporting entities shall report for Scope 3 emissions according to the minimum boundaries listed for each category in the Scope 3 Standard. (§)	☐	☐	☐	
i.	*Category 9: Downstream transportation and distribution*				
i.	The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
ii.	A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied.	☐	☐	☐	
iii.	A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
iv.	The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
v.	The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
vi.	A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
vii.	If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
viii.	A description of any emissions included in the reported category that are outside of the minimum boundary for that category, noting that reporting entities shall report for Scope 3 emissions according to the minimum boundaries listed for each category in the Scope 3 Standard. (§)	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
j.	*Category 10: Processing of sold products*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
k.	*Category 11: Use of sold products*	☐	☐	☐	
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
	viii. A description of any emissions included in the reported category that are outside of the minimum boundary for that category, noting that reporting entities shall report for Scope 3 emissions according to the minimum boundaries listed for each category in the Scope 3 Standard. (§)	☐	☐	☐	
l.	*Category 12: End-of-life treatment of sold products*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
m.	*Category 13: Downstream leased assets*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
	viii. A description of any emissions included in the reported category that are outside of the minimum boundary for that category, noting that reporting entities shall report for Scope 3 emissions according to the minimum boundaries listed for each category in the Scope 3 Standard. (§)	☐	☐	☐	
n.	*Category 14: Franchises*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and GWP values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies)	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
	viii. A description of any emissions included in the reported category that are outside of the minimum boundary for that category, noting that reporting entities shall report for Scope 3 emissions according to the minimum boundaries listed for each category in the Scope 3 Standard. (§)	☐	☐	☐	
o.	*Category 15: Investments*				
	i. The calculated emissions for the category using the minimum boundaries listed for the category, independent of any GHG trades (e.g., purchases, sales, or transfers of offsets or allowances) and/or carbon offsets and excluding biogenic emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	ii. A description of the emissions factors and Global Warming Potential (GWP) values applied	☐	☐	☐	
	iii. A description of the types and sources of data (including activity data) used, including the data quality of reported emissions	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
	iv. The percentage of emissions calculated using data from suppliers or other value chain partners	☐	☐	☐	
	v. The calculation methodologies applied (e.g., a methodology from the Scope 3 Technical Guidance), allocation methods and a description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies). **Note**: Although not required by the GHG Protocol, *Part A — Financed Emissions* of the Partnership for Carbon Accounting Financials' *Global GHG Accounting and Reporting Standard,* which is built on the GHG Protocol, is often used to report on category 15 Scope 3 emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	vi. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation	☐	☐	☐	
	vii. If applicable, for each Scope 3 Category, any biogenic CO_2 emissions reported separately	☐	☐	☐	
21.	**Optional**: When emissions from activities not included in the list of Scope 3 categories are calculated, disclose: (Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11, Corporate Standard Chapter 9)				
	a. The emissions from other activities in an "other" Scope 3 Category separate from the listed Scope 3 categories. **Note**: This may be included as a disclosure or added to the schedule of Scope 3 emissions	☐	☐	☐	
	b. A description of any estimation methodologies used (e.g., proxies, gap filling methodologies, etc.), including providing a reference or link to any calculation tools used	☐	☐	☐	
	c. A description of the data sources used (e.g., to the extent material, actual activity data vs estimated activity data) (§)	☐	☐	☐	
	d. References to the emissions factors used (§)	☐	☐	☐	
	e. A description of any significant assumptions used in the calculation (§)	☐	☐	☐	
22.	For any Scope 3 Categories that use Scope 2 MBM values (e.g., Scope 3 category 3 calculated using the MBM), disclose that the MBM was used for the emissions calculation for that category. This disclosure will likely be included in the category specific calculation description. (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7) (§)	☐	☐	☐	
23.	Disclose any exclusions of sources, facilities and/or operations from emissions disclosures. (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11) **Note:** Emissions disclosed by reporting entities shall be complete within the selected reporting boundary, and the reporting boundary shall be complete to reflect the operations of the company. Any exclusions should be justified	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
24.	**Optional**: Disclose qualitative information about any emission sources that are not quantified and included in the reported Scope 3 emissions (Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)	☐	☐	☐	
25.	**Optional**: Disclose emissions by individual gas in metric tons for reported Scope 3 emissions **Note**: A reporting entity is not required to separately report Scope 3 emissions by individual gas, as is required for Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions	☐	☐	☐	
26.	**Optional**: Disclose further disaggregation of emissions data, such as by business units, facilities, country, source types (e.g., stationary combustion, process, fugitive), and activity types (e.g., production of electricity, transportation). (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)	☐	☐	☐	
27.	**Optional**: Disclose further disaggregation of Scope 3 emissions within each category, such as disaggregation by different types of purchased materials within category 1, or by different types of sold products within category 11. (Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)	☐	☐	☐	
28.	**Optional**: Disclose Scope 3 emissions that have previously occurred separately from Scope 3 emissions expected to occur. (Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11) **Note**: Some of the emissions in certain Scope 3 categories are for future expected emissions such as the lifetime emissions of a sold product in category 11 emissions from the treatment of a company's waste in category 5 and the end-of-life treatment of sold products in category 12. Other emissions have already occurred, such as the lifecycle emissions associated with a purchased good in category 1 or the transportation and distribution losses and associated emissions in category 3.	☐	☐	☐	

III. Other disclosure topics

Targets and goals

29.	If the reporting entity sets a Scope 1 and Scope 2 emissions reduction goal and/or a Scope 2-specific reduction goal, disclose which Scope 2 method (LBM or MBM) the goal is based on. (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7)	☐	☐	☐	
30.	**Optional**: Disclose any GHG management and reduction programs and strategies of the reporting entity. (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)	☐	☐	☐	
31.	**Optional**: Disclose the following about Scope 3 GHG management, targets and goals: (Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)				
	a. Scope 3 reduction targets	☐	☐	☐	
	b. Supplier engagement strategies, reduction activities and performance (e.g., percentage of suppliers that have provided primary GHG emissions data)	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
	c. Product performance (e.g., emissions intensity per product, durability) and GHG reduction activities related to products	☐	☐	☐	
32.	**Optional**: Disclose the relevant emissions performance indicators and intensity ratios (e.g., emissions per kWh generated, emissions per ton of material produced, emissions per sales unit). (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)	☐	☐	☐	
33.	**Optional**: Disclose a description of performance measured against internal and external benchmarks. (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)	☐	☐	☐	
Energy not consumed by the reporting entity					
34.	**Optional**: If the entity generates electricity, heat or steam that is sold or transferred to another entity, disclose the emissions from this generation separately from the Scopes. (Corporate Standard Chapter 9)	☐	☐	☐	
35.	**Optional**: If the entity purchases electricity, heat or steam for re-sale to non-end users, disclose the emissions from this generation separately from the Scopes. (Corporate Standard Chapter 9)	☐	☐	☐	
Energy information					
36.	**Recommended**: Disclose total energy consumption (i.e., both Scope 2 activity data and energy consumption from owned and operated installations included in Scope 1) from the sources listed below in the applicable energy unit (e.g., MWh, BTU): (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7)				
	a. Electricity	☐	☐	☐	
	b. Steam	☐	☐	☐	
	c. Heat	☐	☐	☐	
	d. Cooling	☐	☐	☐	
Report information					
37.	**Optional**: Disclose or include the following about external assurance received over reported emissions data: (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)				
	a. The external assurance received, including the type of assurance, relevant competencies of the assurance provider and conclusion or opinion of the assurance provider	☐	☐	☐	
	b. A copy of the assurance report or verification statement	☐	☐	☐	
38.	**Optional**: Disclose the following about the quality of the GHG inventory: (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)				
	a. Information on the quality of the inventory (e.g., information on the causes and magnitude of uncertainties in emissions estimates)	☐	☐	☐	
	b. A quantitative assessment of data quality	☐	☐	☐	
	c. A discussion of the reporting entity's policies in place to improve inventory quality	☐	☐	☐	

		Yes	No	N/A	Reference/Explanation
39.	**Optional**: Disclose a person that users of the report may contact about the inventory. (Corporate Standard, Chapter 9)	☐	☐	☐	
Carbon offsets and avoidances					
40.	**Optional**: Disclose information on GHG sequestration or removals, as applicable (e.g., biomass-based industries such as forestry), separately from the Scopes. (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11, Corporate Standard Appendix B)	☐	☐	☐	
41.	**Optional**: Disclose the following for GHG emissions reductions or GHG emissions avoided from a project or action within the inventory: (Scope 2 Guidance Chapter 7, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11)				
	a. An estimate of GHG emissions reductions or GHG emissions avoided from the project or action within the inventory, separately from the Scopes, based on project-level accounting	☐	☐	☐	
	b. The methodologies and assumptions used to quantify the avoided emissions estimate, including to what the reduction is being compared	☐	☐	☐	
42.	**Optional**: Disclose the following for offsets that have been purchased or developed outside the emissions inventory boundary: (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11) **Note:** Emissions reported as part of the GHG inventory are reported gross of any offsets. A net emissions value may be separately and distinctly reported from the Scopes				
	a. Amounts of and information about the offsets, disaggregated between storage/removals and emissions reduction projects	☐	☐	☐	
	b. Whether the offsets are verified or certified	☐	☐	☐	
	c. Whether the offsets are approved by an external GHG programs (e.g., Clean Development Mechanism, Joint Implementation)	☐	☐	☐	
43.	**Optional**: Disclose the following for emissions reductions at sources inside the emissions inventory boundary that have been sold or transferred as offsets to third parties: (Corporate Standard Chapter 9, Scope 3 Standard Chapter 11) **Note**: Emissions reported as part of the GHG inventory are reported gross of any reductions that have been sold or transferred as offsets. An emissions value net of offsets, excluding sold or transferred offsets, may be reported separate from the Scopes				
	a. Amounts of and information about the offsets	☐	☐	☐	
	b. Whether the offsets are verified or certified	☐	☐	☐	
	c. Whether the offsets are approved by an external GHG programs (e.g., Clean Development Mechanism, Joint Implementation).	☐	☐	☐	

D Summary of important changes

The following highlights the topics for which substantive updates have been made during the 2024 and 2025 editions of the publication. Other non-substantive or clarifying changes are not listed.

Section 1: Overview and scope

- Section 1.2 was updated to highlight that different standards incorporate the GHG Protocol differently. (September 2024)
- Section 1.3 was updated to highlight the differences between direct and indirect emissions and to address which category Scope 1, Scope 2 and Scope 3 emissions fall under. (September 2024)
- Section 1.4 was updated to include examples of each of the accounting and reporting principles and to add considerations related to exclusions. (December 2024)

Section 2: Key concepts

- Section 2.3 was updated for additional guidance about exclusions. (December 2024)
- Section 2.5.6 was updated to remove the discussion about the SEC rules on climate-related disclosures. (June 2025)
- Section 2.6 was updated with a graphic to illustrate the relationship between the organizational and operational boundaries of a company. (September 2024)
- Section 2.6.2.1 was added to include guidance and illustrative examples of how to account for emissions from energy consumption in a leased building. (September 2024)
- Section 2.7.1 was updated to include guidance on setting a base year and recalculating the base year for Scope 2 emissions. (October 2025)
- Section 2.7.2.1 was updated to modify Illustration 2-2 to add an example disclosure for when the base year is recalculated but other prior years presented are not. (September 2024)
- Section 2.8.2.3 was updated to include guidance on Scope 2 emissions quality criteria. (October 2025)

Section 3: Scope 1 emissions

- Section 3.3.2 was updated to add considerations related to the use of conversion factors when converting emissions factors to different units of measurement. (June 2025)
- Section 3.3.2.1 was added to include descriptions of the various forms of emissions factors (June 2025) and was updated to include guidance on each emissions factor. (October 2025)
- Section 3.5 was updated to remove the discussion about the SEC rules on climate-related disclosures. (June 2025)

Section 4: Scope 2 emissions

- Section 4.3.2.1 was updated to add considerations around activity data that may be obtained when accounting for emissions from leased assets. (September 2024)
- Section 4.6.4 was updated to remove the discussion about the SEC rules on climate-related disclosures. (June 2025)

Section 5: Scope 3 emissions

- Section 5 was updated to add guidance for calculating each of the 15 Scope 3 categories, including information about data quality and calculation methodologies. (December 2024)
- Section 5.3 was updated to include considerations related to reporting emissions from optional activities. (June 2025)
- Section 5.3.1 was updated to add Illustration 5-1, which provides an example of various considerations when evaluating exclusions. (June 2025)
- Section 5.4 was updated to address the selection of a calculation methodology related to tracking GHG emissions and GHG reductions. (October 2025)
- Section 5.5.2.1 was updated for a discussion on considering margins in EEIO data. (June 2025)
- Section 5.7.1 was updated to add a discussion on categorizing upstream emissions. (October 2025)
- Section 5.7.1.1 was updated to add considerations around the specificity of various types of supplier-specific data. (June 2025)
- Section 5.7.1.5 was added for considerations related to transportation when calculating category 1 Scope 3 emissions, including a discussion of margins in emissions factors. (June 2025)
- Section 5.7.2 was updated to include guidance on calculating Scope 3 category 2 emissions using cash-basis versus accrual-basis data. (October 2025)
- Section 5.7.3 was updated to include guidance on the minimum boundary for fuel- and energy-related activities. (October 2025)
- Section 5.7.4 was updated to include discussion on the minimum boundary and optional activities for upstream transportation and distribution. (October 2025)
- Section 5.7.5.1 was updated to include guidance on the data used when calculating emissions from waste generated in operations using the supplier-specific method. (October 2025)
- Section 5.7.5.5 was updated to summarize the guidance from the IPCC for calculating emissions from wastewater. (June 2025)
- Section 5.7.6 was updated to include considerations around the use of sustainable aviation fuel (June 2025) and to discuss the minimum boundary and optional activities for business travel. (October 2025)
- Section 5.7.7 was updated to discuss the minimum boundary for employee computing. (October 2025)
- Section 5.7.8 was updated to discuss the minimum boundary for upstream leased assets. (October 2025)
- Section 5.8.1 was updated to discuss the minimum boundary and optional activities for downstream transportation and distribution. (October 2025)
- Section 5.8.2 was updated to discuss the minimum boundary for processing sold products. (October 2025)
- Section 5.8.5 was updated to discuss the minimum boundary and optional activities for downstream leased assets. (October 2025)

- Section 5.8.3.1.1 was updated to add a discussion about the use of EACs when calculating emissions from the use of sold products. (June 2025)
- Section 5.8.6 was updated to highlight the difference in the definition of a franchise under the GHG Protocol and financial reporting and to include a discussion on the optional activities for franchises. (October 2025)
- Section 5.10 was updated to reflect that sampling may be necessary in cases where data is unavailable and to specify when disclosure may be required when sampling is necessary. (October 2025)
- Section 5.11.4 was updated to remove the discussion about the SEC rules on climate-related disclosures. (June 2025)

EY | Building a better working world

EY is building a better working world by creating new value for clients, people, society and the planet, while building trust in capital markets.

Enabled by data, AI and advanced technology, EY teams help clients shape the future with confidence and develop answers for the most pressing issues of today and tomorrow.

EY teams work across a full spectrum of services in assurance, consulting, tax, strategy and transactions. Fueled by sector insights, a globally connected, multi-disciplinary network and diverse ecosystem partners, EY teams can provide services in more than 150 countries and territories.

All in to shape the future with confidence.

SCORE no. 21548-231US
(Revised October 2025)

This and many of the publications produced by our US Professional Practice Group, are available free on AccountingLink at **ey.com/en_us/technical/accountinglink**.